AL-BAHER

CONNECT

الصف الرابع الابتدائي

First Term

A C D

4th Primary

هدية مجانية نسخة تجريبية للمدرسين غير مخصصة للبيع

بتصريح و تحت إشراف MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

2025

Parents' Guide

Contents

Review on Primary (3)

Feelings المشاعر

angry	غضبان	happy	سعيد	excited	متحمس - مسرور
sad	حزين	hungry	جوعان	thirsty	عطشان
tired	متعب	kind	عطوف	unkind	غير عطوف - قاس

Body & Illnesses الجسم و الأمراض

stomach	معدة	bone	عظمة	heart	قلب
skin	جلد	cold	برد	cough	كحة - سعال
fever	حمّى	sick	مريض	headache	صداع

Activities الأنشطة

play sports	يمارس الرياضة	collect magnets	يجمع قطع المغناطيس
sing songs	يغني أغاني	listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى
draw a picture	يرسم صورة	take photos	يلتقط صورًا

Furniture الأثاث

armchair	كرسي بذراعين	bookcase	خزانة كتب	chair	كرسي
clock	ساعة حائط	cupboard	دولاب	lamp	أباجورة / مصباح
couch	كنبة - أريكة	television	تلفاز	table	طاولة - منضدة

Animals الحيوانات

elephant	فيل	giraffe	زرافة	hippo	فرس النهر
lion	أسد	panda	دُب الباندا	penguin	طائر البطريق

Circus people العاملون في السيرك

clown	مُهرّج	ringmaster	مدير الحلبة
dog trainer	مدرب كلاب	trapeze artist	لاعب الأرجوحة

Help your child revise these words.
ساعد طفلك في مراجعة هذه الكلمات.

Countries & Nationalities الدول والجنسيات

Egypt	مصر	Egyptian	مصري
America	أمريكا	American	أمريكي
China	الصين	Chinese	صيني
France	فرنسا	French	فرنسي

Sea Creatures المخلوقات البحرية

octopus	أخطبوط	jellyfish	قنديل البحر	starfish	نجم البحر
sea snake	ثعبان البحر	seahorse	حصان البحر	fish	سمكة
shark	سمكة القرش	tilapia	سمكة البلطي		

Seasons & Weather فصول السنة والطقس

winter	الشتاء	spring	الربيع	summer	الصيف
fall	الخريف	hot	حار	rainy	ممطر
sunny	مشمس	cold	بارد	cloudy	غائم

Technology تكنولوجيا

information	معلومات	website	موقع على الإنترنت	internet	الإنترنت
cell phone	هاتف محمول	keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح	mouse	فأرة
computer	كمبيوتر	search engine	محرك بحث	tablet	تابلت
email	بريد إلكتروني				

Phonics:

ee /i:/

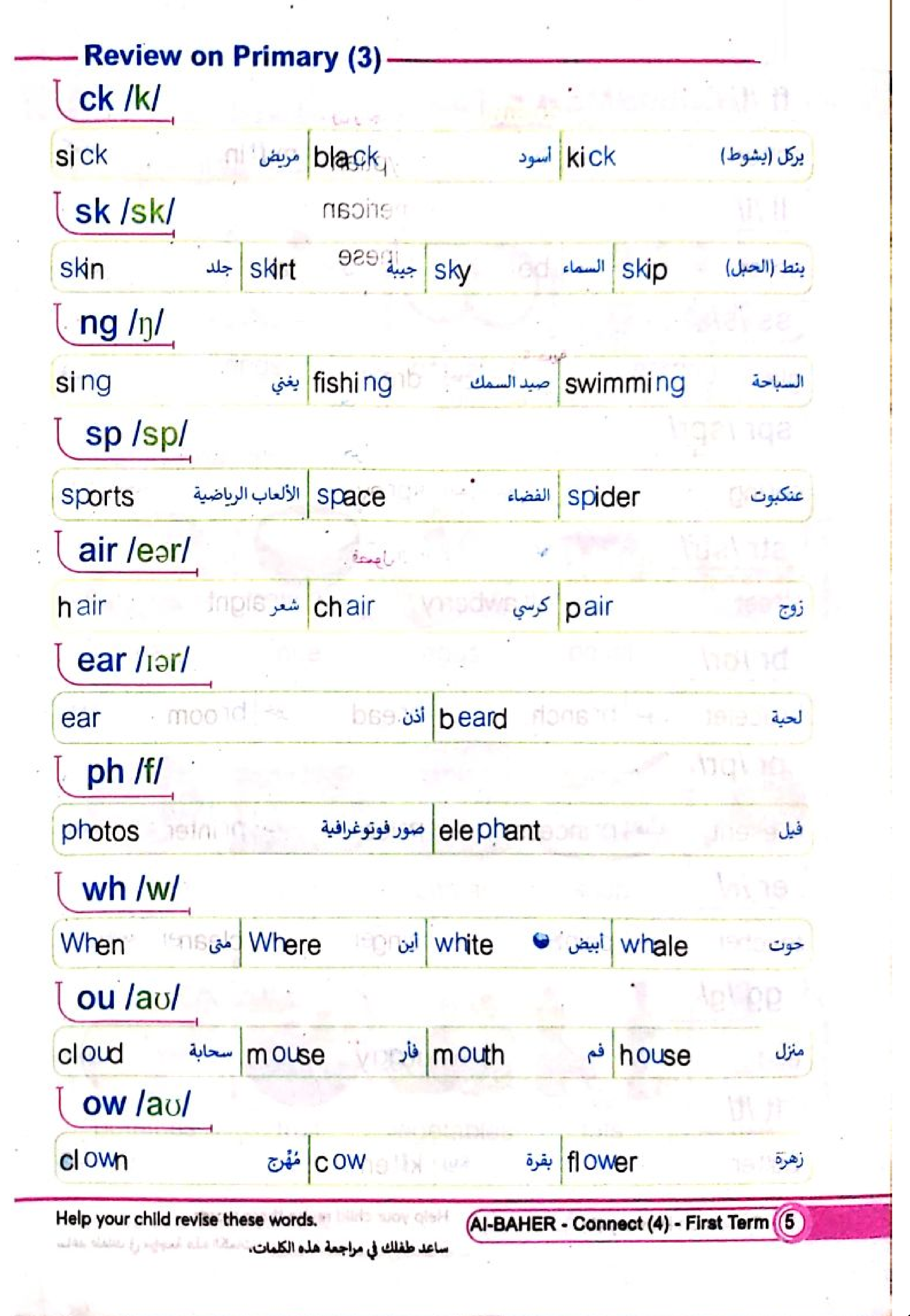
feel happy	يشعر بسعادة	bee	نحلة	sleep	ينام

ea /i:/

leaf	ورقة شجر	clean	ينظف
meat	لحم	eat	يأكل

Help your child revise these words.

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة هذه الكلمات.



Review on Primary (3)

ck /k/

sick مريض	black أسود	kick يركل (يشوط)

sk /sk/

skin جلد	skirt جيبة	sky السماء	skip ينط (الحبل)

ng /ŋ/

sing يغني	fishing صيد السمك	swimming السباحة

sp /sp/

sports الألعاب الرياضية	space الفضاء	spider عنكبوت

air /eər/

hair شعر	chair كرسي	pair زوج

ear /ɪər/

ear أذن	beard لحية

ph /f/

photos صور فوتوغرافية	elephant فيل

wh /w/

When متى	Where أين	white أبيض	whale حوت

ou /aʊ/

cloud سحابة	mouse فأر	mouth فم	house منزل

ow /aʊ/

clown مُهَرج	cow بقرة	flower زهرة



ff /f/

coffee قهوة	off مغلق	muffin كعكة

ll /l/

dollar دولار	bell جرس	tall طويل

ss /s/

glass زجاج	dress فستان

spr /spr/

spring فصل الربيع	spray رشاش - بخاخ

str /str/

street شارع	strawberry فراولة	straight مستقيم

br /br/

bracelet سوار	branch فرع	bread خبز	broom مقشة

pr /pr/

present هدية	princess أميرة	price سعر	printer طابعة

er /ə/

teacher معلم	painter رسام	singer مغني	cleaner عامل نظافة

gg /g/

egg بيضة	foggy ضبابي

tt /t/

butter زبدة	kitten قطة صغيرة

Help your child revise these words.

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

LET'S REMEMBER!



Help your child revise these words.

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة هذه الكلمات.



Ask and answer.

اسأل و أجب.

How long is the Sphinx? كم طول أبو الهول؟

It's seventy-three meters long. طوله ٧٣ مترًا.

How tall is the Cairo Tower? كم طول برج القاهرة؟

It's 187 meters tall. طوله ١٨٧ مترًا.

Where are you from? من أين أنت؟

I'm from China. I'm Chinese. أنا من الصين. أنا صيني.

When is your birthday? متى يوم ميلادك؟

It's on January 19th. إنه في التاسع عشر من يناير.

What did you do yesterday? ماذا فعلت بالأمس؟

I visited the bazaar, I bought a bag. زرت البازار واشتريت حقيبة.

What would you like? ماذا تريد؟

I'd like some water, please. أريد بعض الماء من فضلك.

Help your child ask and answer.

ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب.

Lesson (2) LET'S REMEMBER!

Months of the year شهور السنة

























Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
go	يذهب	went
see	يرى	saw
buy	يشتري	bought
have / has	يمتلك	had
am / is	يكون	was
are	يكونوا	were

Help your child remember months of the year.
ساعد طفلك في تذكر شهور السنة.

Punctuation Marks

علامات الترقيم

Capital letters




- It's sunny. — في بداية الجملة:
- Ali - Mona — مع أسماء الأشخاص:
- Alexandria, Egypt — مع أسماء المدن والدول:
- I can jump. — الضمير (I) في أي مكان في الجملة:
- Montaza Palace - the Sphinx — مع أسماء الأماكن السياحية:

Full stop / Period (.)


نستخدم النقطة في نهاية الجملة.

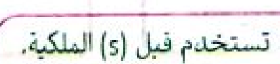
- It is a cat .

Comma (,)

نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى (,) عند كتابة قائمة (مجموعة) من الأشياء.

- I bought apples, oranges, bananas and mangoes.

Apostrophe (')

- This is Ali's book.


تستخدم في الاختصارات.

- I'm happy.

Question Mark (?)


نستخدم علامة الاستفهام (?) في نهاية السؤال.

- How long is it ?

Exclamation mark (!)


نستخدم علامة التعجب (!) للتعبير عن الدهشة.

- What a nice dress !
- I feel excited!

Help your child revise punctuation marks.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع علامات الترقيم .





1 Look and complete. انظر وأكمل.

			
r_ngs	f_sh	ve_etables	J_ly
			
b_y	pl_y	m_lk	A_gust

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. What did you do .... ?
   a) **now** b) **today** c) **yesterday** d) **tomorrow**
2. How long .... the bridge?
   a) **did** b) **is** c) **are** d) **were**
3. I am from America. I'm ....
   a) **Chinese** b) **Japanese** c) **Egyptian** d) **American**
4. I .... shopping yesterday.
   a) **go** b) **going** c) **goes** d) **went**
5. She .... her grandma last Friday.
   a) **visited** b) **visits** c) **visit** d) **visiting**

Unit 1 I feel good

أشعر أنني (بخير /بحالة جيدة)



In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف.......

- listen, read, research, and write about foods and how to keep healthy.
  يستمع، ويقرأ، ويبحث، ويكتب عن بعض الأطعمة وكيف يبقى سليمًا معافًا.
- practice making sentences with and or but
  يتدرب على صياغة جمل باستخدام (and) أو (but).
- read and listen to a Chinese fable.
  يقرأ ويستمع إلى خرافة «أسطورة» صينية.
- distinguish long and short vowels.
  يميز بين الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة.
- talk about a place in Egypt.
  يتحدث عن مكان في مصر.
- research and make a presentation.
  يقوم بعمل بحث وعرض تقديمي.

Lesson (1) FOOD AND DRINK



Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



chicken
دجاج



milk
حليب



bananas
موز



watermelon
بطيخ



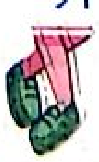


grapes
عنب



sugarcane
قصب السكر







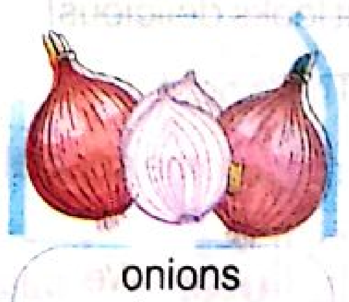
mangoes
مانجو



rice
أرز



potatoes
بطاطس



onions
بصل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Egyptian farmers	الفلاحون المصريون	breakfast	الإفطار	country	دولة
special (adj)	خاص / مميز	lunch	الغداء	ready	جاهز
meals	وجبات	dinner	العشاء	healthy	صحي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
raise	يربي	raise d	produce	ينتج	produce d

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
get	يحصل على	got	keep	يربي - يحافظ	kept
feed	يُطعم	fed	make	يصنع - يعد	made
build	يبني	built	grow	يزرع - ينمو	grew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Let's eat.	هيا بنا نأكل.	come from	يأتي من
grow healthier	ينمو بصحة أفضل	Yum!	لذيذ - شهي!
grow rice	يزرع أرزًا	What else?	وماذا أيضًا؟
It looks delicious!	يبدو لذيذًا!	think about	يفكر في
That's right.	هذا صحيح.	for us	من أجلنا
made some special food for			أعدَّ بعض الطعام المميز لـ

Note: We raise animals like chickens, goats and cows.
We grow plants like rice, tomatoes and onions.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.


Mom and Maged

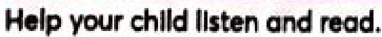


Mom	:	Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us. الغداء جاهز. قمت بإعداد بعض الطعام الخاص لنا.
Maged	:	Mom, it looks delicious! أمي، إنه يبدو شهيًا!
Mom	:	Which food comes from our country, do you think? أي طعام يأتي من بلدنا في اعتقادك؟
Maged	:	I think we grow rice in Egypt. أعتقد أننا نزرع الأرز في مصر.
Mom	:	Yes, that's right What else? نعم، هذا صحيح، وماذا أيضًا؟
Maged	:	Hmmm, I think we raise chickens in Egypt. همم، أعتقد أننا نربي الدجاج في مصر.
Mom	:	Yes, and tomatoes and onions. Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table. Let's eat! نعم، وطماطم وبصلًا، المزارعون المصريون ينتجون الكثير من الأشياء التي تراها على هذه الطاولة، هيا نأكل!
Maged	:	Yum! لذيذًا



What foods do we produce in Egypt?
ما الأطعمة التي ننتجها في مصر؟

We produce vegetables like onions, potatoes, and tomatoes.
نحن ننتج الخضروات مثل البصل والبطاطس والطماطم.



Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



1 **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I think we grow .... in Egypt
   a) corn   b) rice   c) cotton   d) wheat
2. Egyptian .... grow many vegetables
   a) doctors   b) vets   c) teachers   d) farmers
3. Egyptian farmers .... chickens
   a) raise   b) seed   c) grow   d) look
4. They keep .... to get milk
   a) fish   b) birds   c) cows   d) snakes

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The food looks ....
   a) happy   b) sad   c) delicious   d) fast
2. Farmers keep chickens to get eggs and ....
   a) milk   b) meat   c) skin   d) honey
3. Farmers grow ....
   a) birds   b) cows   c) chickens   d) rice
4. Potatoes and onions are ....
   a) fruits   b) birds   c) vegetables   d) animals
5. We .... chickens in Egypt
   a) come   b) grow   c) play   d) raise
6. We eat .... in the morning
   a) lunch   b) supper   c) breakfast   d) dinner
7. We produce vegetables like .... in Egypt
   a) onions   b) bananas   c) watermelons   d) oranges
8. We raise animals .... goats and cows in Egypt
   a) like   b) as   c) example   d) look
9. A lot of food comes .... Egypt
   a) from   b) off   c) on   d) over

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (1)

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

grapes - chicken - sugar - produce - delicious

Fruits grow in different times of the year. We 1) .... different kinds of them in Egypt. Mangoes and 2) .... grow in summer. We get 3) .... from sugarcane. Fruits are 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Egyptian farmers are very important to us. They produce many things for us. They can grow rice, potatoes, onions, and sugarcane. Farmers in Egypt also raise many animals such as; goats, sheep, cows and chickens. We can get meat and eggs from chickens. Egyptian vegetables and fruits are very delicious.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Egyptian .... are very important to us.
   a) doctors   b) teachers   c) farmers   d) carpenters
2. They .... many things for us.
   a) produce   b) get   c) cook   d) come

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why are farmers very important?

....

4. What kind of animals do Egyptian farmers raise?

....

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

what animals do farmers raise in egypt?

....

Lesson (2) I AM HEALTHY

Vocabulary

Healthy	صحي	Unhealthy	غير صحي
play football	يلعب كرة القدم	drink	يشرب مياه غازية
play basketball	يلعب كرة السلة	eat a burger	يأكل ساندوتش برجر
do homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي	eat candy	يأكل الحلوى
eat fruit	يأكل الفاكهة	play video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة | *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
walk	يمشي	walked	do	يفعل	did
talk	يتحدث	talked	hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	hurt
practice	يتدرب	practiced	hit	يضرب	hit

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	in the park	في الحديقة
once a week	مرة في الأسبوع	change into	يتغير - يغير إلى
twice a week	مرتين في الأسبوع	drink more water	يشرب مياه أكثر
drink fresh juices	يشرب عصائر طازجة	do a sport	يمارس رياضة
go walking	يذهب للتمشية	on Saturday	في يوم السبت

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

استمع و اقرأ.

Do you think you're healthy, Judy? هل تعتقدين أنك بصحة جيدة يا جودي؟



Yes, I do. I do a lot of sport at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake!

نعم أعتقد ذلك. أنا أمارس الكثير من الرياضة في المدرسة. في العطلة الأسبوعية أسير إلى منزل جدتي مع عائلتي. أنا حقًا أحب المشي لأنني أستطيع التحدث إلى والدتي ووالدي. نستطيع أن نرى المنازل والمحلات المختلفة. لا آكل الحلوى، ولكني أحب الفاكهة. فاكهتي المفضلة هي الموز والبطيخ. أمي تصنع لبنًا مخفوقًا بالموز رائعًا.

Do you think you're healthy, Adam? هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة يا آدم؟

Yes. I am in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I drink , but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball and I play football in the park.

نعم. أنا عضو في فريق كرة السلة على كرسي متحرك في المدرسة. نتدرب ثلاث مرات كل أسبوع. أنا أشرب الكولا، ولكنني أريد أن أشرب المزيد من الماء. لا ألعب ألعاب الفيديو لأني مشغول للغاية. ألعب كرة السلة وكرة القدم في الحديقة.

Do you think you're healthy, Dareen? هل تعتقدين أنك بصحة جيدة يا دارين؟



Yes, I think I'm healthy. My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every weekend. It's very interesting, but it's very hot sometimes! I only drink water because I don't like . I love burgers, but I only eat one a week. My mom makes yummy salads.

نعم أعتقد أنني بصحة جيدة. أمي وأنا نذهب للتمشية في الصحراء مع والدي. أبي عالم ويحب دراسة الحيوانات والنباتات. نذهب معه كل عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه أمر ممتع للغاية، ولكن الطقس حار جدًا في بعض الأحيان! أنا أشرب الماء فقط لأنني لا أحب الكولا. أحب البرجر، ولكنني أتناول واحدًا فقط كل أسبوع. تعد أمي أنواعًا لذيذة من السلطات.

Language Focus

Conjunctions أدوات الربط

and (و)

We use **and** to add two ideas together.
نستخدم (and) لربط فكرتين معاً.



I eat vegetables, **and** I exercise.

but (لكن)

We use **but** to contrast two ideas.
نستخدم (but) لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.



I want to play football, **but** I hurt my leg.

Look and read. انظر و اقرأ.

I practice basketball on Wednesday,
and I walk home from school every day.





I love playing video games, but
I only play them on Saturday.

Help your child identify the conjunctions (and & but)
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الروابط (but و and).

Lesson (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I don't eat candy, ... I like fruit.
   a) but   b) and   c) so   d) because
2. He doesn't drink cola, ... he drinks fresh juice.
   a) so   b) or   c) but   d) and
3. She plays basketball .... football in the park.
   a) because   b) and   c) so   d) but
4. Dad is a scientist .... he likes looking at animals and plants.
   a) or   b) and   c) because   d) but
5. It's a very interesting place, ... it's very hot sometimes!
   a) or   b) because   c) but   d) and
6. I love burgers, ... I only eat them once a week.
   a) and   b) or   c) because   d) but
7. Fatima loves ice cream .... chocolate.
   a) but   b) and   c) so   d) or
8. My dad is Egyptian, ... his dad is French.
   a) and   b) but   c) because   d) so
9. Waleed speaks English, ... he can't speak Chinese.
   a) or   b) and   c) so   d) but
10. I eat fruit .... I exercise.
   a) and   b) so   c) but   d) or

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Farmers produce tomatoes .... (but) potatoes.
2. It's a very interesting café, ... (and) it's very hot sometimes.
3. I love video games, ... (and) I only play them on Sunday.
4. I like fruit .... (but) vegetables.
5. I like reading stories, ... (and) I don't like watching TV.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I'm in a wheelchair .... team at scho
   a) football b) handball c) basketball d) volleyball
2. We practice .... times every wee
   a) three b) four c) five d) six
3. I don't drink .... , but I want to drink more wat
   a) milk b) cola c) tea d) coffee
4. I play basketball in the ....
   a) club b) school c) street d) park

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I like fruits and vegetables because they are ....
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad d) scary
2. Football is my favorite ....
   a) food b) drink c) sport d) animal
3. Mona doesn't drink .... because it's unhealth
   a) cola b) water c) milk d) juice
4. My favorite .... are bananas and watermelo
   a) vegetables b) drinks c) fruits d) animals

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

interesting - water - weekend - scientist - makes

My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad i a 1) .... and he likes looking at animals and plan We go with him every 2) .... , but it's very hot sometime I only drink 3) .... because I don't like . I love burge but I only eat one a week. My mom 4) .... yummy sala

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

I'm Mahmoud. I do a lot of sports at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different house and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Mahmoud do a lot of sports at ....
   a) **park** b) **school** c) **zoo** d) **garden**
2. Mahmoud walks to his .... house with his family.
   a) **grandma's** b) **aunt's** c) **uncle's** d) **friend's**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why does Mahmoud like walking? ....
4. What are Mahmoud's favorite fruits? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Ali wants to be healthy, ... (and) he doesn't like vegetables.
2. I want to play basketball, ... (and) I hurt my hand.
3. I can play video games .... (but) football.
4. Dad is a scientist .... (but) he likes looking at animals and plants.
5. I love burgers, ... (and) I only eat one a week.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- do you think you're healthy

....

Lesson (3) THE EMPTY POT: A FOLKTALE FROM CHINA

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

emperor	إمبراطور	competition	مسابقة
palace	قصر	gardener	بستاني

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

China	الصين	next	التالي	only	فقط
important	هام	pot	إناء	seed	بذرة
everyone	كل واحد	garden	حديقة	empty	فارغ
beautiful	جميل	dead	ميت	plant	نبات
winning	الفوز	honesty	أمانة	honest	أمين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
describe	يصف	described	happen	يحدث	happened
lie	يكذب	lied	try	يحاول	tried
plant	يزرع	planted	water	يروى	watered

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

grow into	تصبح	look after	يعتني بـ
bring...back	يعيد	At the palace	في القصر
good at	جيد في	work hard	يعمل بجد

Definitions تعريفات

emperor	is someone who is like a king	امبراطور
palace	is where an emperor lives	قصر
honest	is someone who doesn't lie	أمين
competition	is when someone tries to win	مسابقة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the emperor. He lived in a beautiful palace. One day the emperor said, "There will be a competition. I will give a seed to each gardener. The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor."

عاش تشنج منذ فترة طويلة في الصين. أهم رجل في الصين كان الإمبراطور. يعيش في قصر جميل. في يوم قال الإمبراطور «ستكون هناك منافسة. سوف أعطي بذرة لكل بستاني. الشخص الذي يمكنه زراعة أجمل نبات من البذرة سيكون الإمبراطور التالي.»

"Take the pot and the seed. Plant it." says the emperor. "Make it grow into a beautiful plant. Then bring the plant back to me."
Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden.
He put the seed in the sun and gave it water.
But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew.

قال الإمبراطور «خذ القدر والبذرة. وازرعها.» «اجعلها تنمو لتصبح نباتا جميلا. ثم أعد النبات إلي.» كان تشنج جيدا جدا في زراعة الأشياء والعناية بحديقته. وضع البذرة في الشمس وأعطاها الماء. لكن لم يحدث شيء. حاول تشنج لأسابيع ولكن لم ينمو أي نبات.

The other gardeners had plants that grew.
At the palace, all the gardeners have beautiful plants.
"Where is your plant?" the emperor asks Cheng.
"I worked very hard. I watered it every day," says Cheng.
"But it didn't grow." "Then you win!" says the emperor. "The seeds I gave everyone were dead. The seeds cannot grow. Only you are good and honest. So you will be the next emperor!"

كان لدى البستانيين الآخرين نباتات نمت. في القصر، جميع البستانيين لديهم نباتات جميلة. سأل الإمبراطور تشنج «أين هو النبات الخاص بك؟». قال تشنج «لقد عملت بجد. كنت أسقيها كل يوم». «ولكنها لم تنمو.» قال الإمبراطور «لذلك ستفوز!» «لقد أعطيت الجميع بذور ميتة. لا يمكنها أن تنمو. أنت فقط الجيد والأمين. لذلك سوف تكون الإمبراطور القادم!»

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Pronunciation

Vowel Sounds

Short vowels



bag حقيبة

- The letter (a) makes the sound /æ/.



mom أم

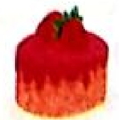
- The letter (o) makes the sound /ɒ/.



mix يخلط

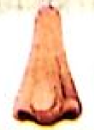
- The letter (i) makes the sound /ɪ/.

Long vowels



cake كيك

- The letters (a - e) make the sound /eɪ/.



nose أنف

- The letters (o - e) make the sound /əʊ/.



rice أرز

- The letters (i - e) make the sound /aɪ/.

Word Formation



The prefix "re-" means "again". البادئة "re" تعني «مرة أخرى».

"re-" = again

reclean يعيد تنظيف	redo يعيد عمل
remake يعيد تصنيع	repaint يعيد دهان

Listen and say. استمع وقل.

1- He painted his house again. ⟶ He repainted his house.
2- She cleaned her bike again. ⟶ She recleaned her bike.
3- He made pizza again. ⟶ He remade pizza.
4- She did her homework again. ⟶ She redid her homework.

Help your child identify short and long vowels. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة والطويلة

Help your child identify the prefix "re". ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على البادئة «re»



Comparing large digits : Ascending order

مقارنة الأرقام الكبيرة: الترتيب التصاعدي

Key vocabulary

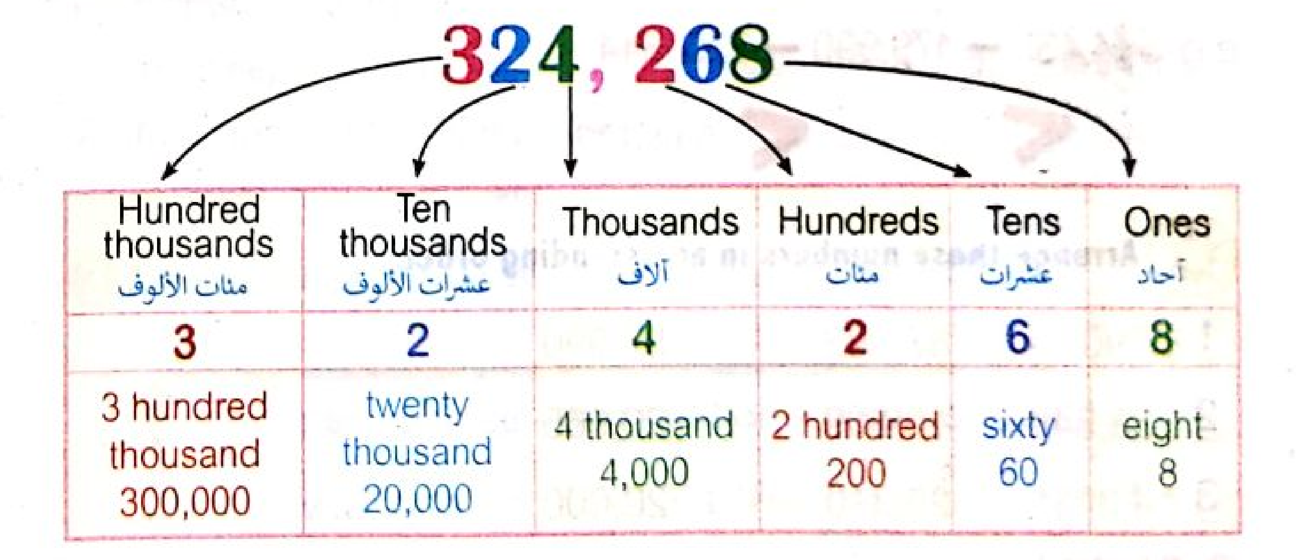
hundred مائة	thousand ألف	million مليون
ascending تصاعدي	sign علامة	digits الأرقام

\> greater than أكبر من

< less than أصغر من

= equal to يساوي

① Reading large digits قراءة الأعداد الكبيرة



Hundred thousands مئات الألوف	Ten thousands عشرات الألوف	Thousands آلاف	Hundreds مئات	Tens عشرات	Ones آحاد
3	2	4	2	6	8
3 hundred thousand 300,000	twenty thousand 20,000	4 thousand 4,000	2 hundred 200	sixty 60	eight 8

1. (544,432) five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two.
2. (976,421,357) nine hundred, seventy-six million, four hundred twenty-one thousand and three hundred fifty-seven.

② Comparing numbers مقارنة الأرقام

Compare 4,134 and 4, 212.

Step (1) Begin at the left. Compare (4, 134 / 4,212)

Both numbers have 4 thousands.

Step (2) Find the first place where the digits are different.

Compare (4, 134 / 4,212)

1 hundred is less than 2 hundred

So, 4, 134 < 4,212 or 4,212 > 4, 134

③ Ascending order: الترتيب التصاعدي

In ascending order, we order the numbers from the smallest to the greatest

في الترتيب التصاعدي، نرتب الأرقام من الأصغر إلى الأكبر.

e.g. 544,432 – 179,990 – 226, 344

179,990  226, 344 < 544,432

Arrange these numbers in an ascending order.

1. 87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990 ....
2. 233,346 - 10,009 - 20,665 ....
3. 19,313 - 20,310 - 20,000 ....

Note:

The numerical digits we use today 1,2 and 3 are based on the Hindu-Arabic numerical system. This system was developed over 1000 years ago.

الأرقام التي نستخدمها هذه الأيام (1 و 2 و 3) جاءت من نظام العد العربي الهندي، وهذا النظام تطور على مدار الألف عام الماضية.

Help your child arrange numbers in ascending order.

ساعد طفلك أن يرتب الأرقام ترتيبًا تصاعديًا.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Our house is very old. We want to .... it.
   a) repaint   b) redo   c) reread   d) remake
2. The boys dropped juice on the floor. We need to .... the room.
   a) redo   b) reclean   c) rebuild   d) reread
3. His homework isn't correct. He will .... it.
   a) repaint   b) rebuild   c) reclean   d) redo
4. An emperor is someone who is like a ....
   a) teacher   b) king   c) doctor   d) farmer
5. A palace is where an emperor ....
   a) travels   b) lives   c) plays   d) visits
6. Someone who is honest doesn't ....
   a) sleep   b) lie   c) lay   d) speak
7. In a competition someone tries to ....
   a) eat   b) win   c) sleep   d) lose

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

gardener - palace - competition - emperor - help

Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the 1) .... He lived in a beautiful 2) .... One day the emperor said, "There will be a 3) .... I will give a seed to each 4) .... The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor."

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

One day, an emperor in China gave the gardeners some seeds to grow. The emperor told the gardeners that the one who could grow the most beautiful plant, he would be the next emperor. Cheng was one of the gardeners. Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew. At the end, Cheng won because the seeds were dead. Only Cheng is honest and good. So, he would be the next emperor.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. An emperor in .... gave the gardeners some seeds to grow.
   a) Egypt b) Japan c) China d) France
2. Only Cheng is .... and good.
   a) honest b) bad c) liar d) beautiful

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why didn't Cheng's seed grow? ....
4. Who would be the next emperor? ....

4 Put the correct sign (>, < or =):

1. 655,534 ☐ 698,881
2. 10,000,000 ☐ ten million
3. 100,000,000 ☐ 99,999,999

5 Read and write the digits in words:

1. 561,982: ....
2. 30,120: ....
3. 98,500: ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lessons (4 & 5)

WRITING

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

land	أرض	catch	يصطاد
live	يعيش	governorate	محافظة
famous for	مشهور بـ	fisherman	صياد سمك

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

guava	جوافة	sheep	خروف - غنم
lemons	ليمون	wheat	قمح
goats	ماعز	cheese	جبن
people	ناس	grapes	عنب
part	جزء	nutrients	مواد - عناصر غذائية
information	معلومات	Damietta	دمياط
sugarcane	قصب السكر	Domiati	دمياطي
produce	ينتج	Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر
cotton	القطن	corn	الذرة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

thousands of	الآلاف من	full of	ملئ بـ
rich in	غني بـ	what I know	ما أعرفه
a half million	نصف مليون	live in	يعيش في

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Food from Damietta



The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous.

About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

الأرض في محافظة دمياط مليئة بالمواد الغذائية. يستطيع المزارعون زراعة الأرز والطماطم والبطاطس والقمح والليمون والعنب والجوافة. يصطاد الصيادون آلاف الأسماك من البحر. تعيش الأبقار والماعز والأغنام في محافظة دمياط أيضًا. الجبنة الدمياطي مشهورة جدًا. يعيش حوالي مليون ونصف مليون شخص في هذا الجزء من مصر. الحياة جيدة في دمياط.



Research Minya





K — What I Know	W — What I Want to Know	L — What I Learned
Farmers in Minya grow sugarcane.	other crops	the population (السكان)

Help your child look and read. ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

Ask and answer.

Where is Minya?
أين تقع محافظة المنيا؟

It's in Upper Egypt.
إنها في صعيد مصر.



What do farmers produce in Minya?
ماذا ينتج المزارعون في المنيا؟

They produce cotton and bananas.
إنهم ينتجون القطن والموز.

What food comes from Minya?
ما الطعام الذي يأتي من المنيا؟

Wheat and corn.
القمح والذرة.

Who lives there?
من يعيش هناك؟

About 5.8 million Egyptians.
حوالي ٥.٨ مليون مصري.

Your turn

Choose another governorate, research and write.
اختر محافظة أخرى، ثم ابحث واكتب عنها.





What I Know	What I Want to Know	What I Learned



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live in ....
   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Minya d) Damietta
2. .... can grow cotton, corn, wheat, dates and sugarcane.
   a) Teachers b) Farmers c) Doctors d) Fishermen
3. It's famous for .... honey.
   a) pink b) white c) red d) black
4. About six million .... live in Minya.
   a) people b) birds c) animals d) plants

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Adam lives in Damietta ....
   a) governorate b) park c) school d) library
2. Damietta is famous .... Domiati cheese.
   a) on b) in c) at d) for
3. The farmers .... tomatoes and potatoes.
   a) read b) write c) grow d) play
4. Goats, cows and sheep are ....
   a) colors b) animals c) sports d) birds

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

fishermen - fish - cheese - Damietta - farmers

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The 1) .... can grow rice, tomatoes, wheat and grapes. Fishermen catch thousands of 2) .... in the sea. Cows, goats and sheep live in 3) .... governorate. Domiati 4) .... is very famous.

 Help your child deal with such questions.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas.
Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate too. Domiati cheese is very famous.
About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about .... governorate.
   a) Damietta b) Cairo c) Giza d) Minya
2. .... catch thousands of fish in the sea.
   a) Fishermen b) Teachers c) Doctors d) Farmers

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can farmers grow in Damietta?

....

4. How many people live in Damietta?

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Damietta governorate

Guiding words:

(Damietta - grow - fish - cheese)

....

....

....

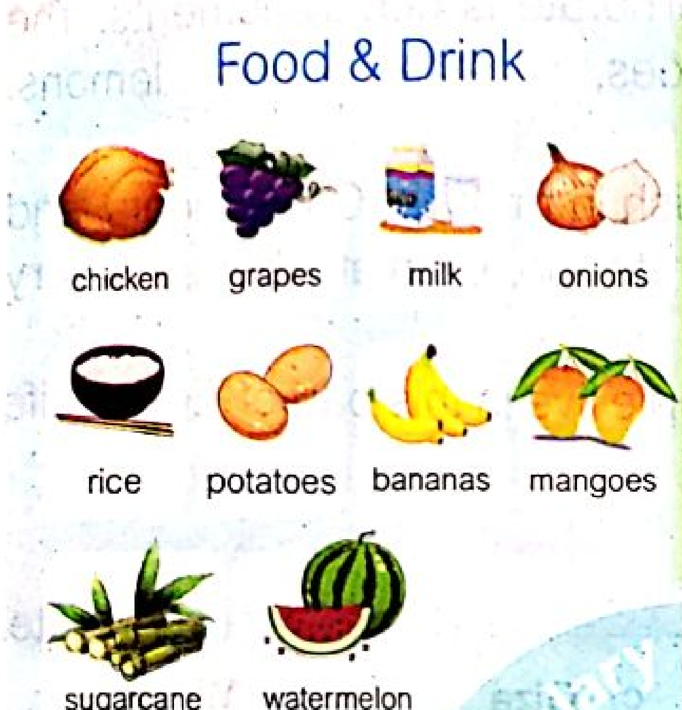
....

....

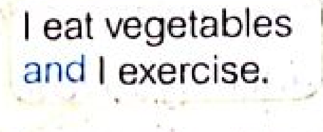


Review on Unit (1)

Food & Drink



sugarcane watermelon







I don't eat candy,
but I like fruit.

Vocabulary — Language — Phonics — Math

I feel good

Short vowels

bag mom mix

Long vowels

cake nose rice

Prefix "re-"

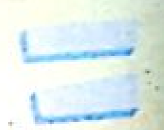
repaint	reclean	remake	redo
يعيد تلوين	يعيد تنظيف	يعيد تصنيع	يعيد عمل شيء

- Ascending order is from the smallest to the greatest.

87.092 - 87.909 - 87.990







greater than	less than	equal to
أكبر من	أصغر من	يساوي





Farmers in Egypt

Farmers in Egypt do a very important job. They raise chickens and sheep to get meat and eggs. They raise cows to get milk. They make cheese and butter from milk. They grow vegetables like onions and potatoes. They also grow fruit like mangoes, grapes and bananas. They use the water from the Nile to water the plants.

Healthy food

Vegetables and fruits are healthy food. Many people love to eat fruits but they don't eat a lot of vegetables. We grow many kinds of fruits and vegetables in Egypt. We grow rice, onions and oranges. We should eat fruits and vegetables every day.

Damietta governorate

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate too. Domiati cheese is very famous.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

موزة	دجاجة ....
عنب	مانجو ....
بطيخ	قصب السكر ....
بصل	بطاطس ....
أرز	لبن ....
فلاح	يربي ....

Lesson (2)

يلعب كرة القدم	يشرب مياه غازية ....
يلعب كرة السلة	يأكل ساندوتش برجر ....
يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي	يأكل الحلوى ....
يأكل الفاكهة	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو ....

Lesson (3)

إمبراطور	الصين ....
قصر	بذرة ....
مسابقة	نبات ....
بستاني	أمين ....

Lessons (4 & 5)

دمياط	يصطاد ....
دمياطي	خروف ....
جبن	قمح ....
محافظة	صياد سمك ....
مشهور	الأرض ....



Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.



Activities on Unit (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My .... made special food for us.
   a) mom b) sister c) grandma d) aunt
2. It looks ....
   a) beautiful b) delicious c) bad d) handsome
3. Egyptian .... produce many kinds of fruits and vegetables.
   a) teachers b) fishermen c) farmers d) doctors
4. My mom says we also grow .... in Egypt.
   a) wheat b) corn c) carrots d) rice

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... is where an emperor lives.
   a) farm b) park c) zoo d) palace
2. Farmers grow a lot of food for us to ....
   a) eat b) grow c) raise d) keep
3. We get .... and meat from chickens.
   a) milk b) eggs c) rice d) potatoes
4. Cheng wanted to .... the seeds to grow.
   a) redo b) replant c) rebuild d) reclean

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

cheese - rice - Damietta - Fishermen - farmers

The land in Damietta is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow 1) ...., tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guavas. 2) .... catch fish in the sea. Domiati 3) .... is very famous. Life is good in 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many foods come from Egypt. Egypt is famous for growing rice. We produce vegetables like onions, potatoes, and tomatoes. Egypt produces fruits like mangoes, bananas, and watermelons. Egyptian food is delicious. Egyptian farmers raise animals on their farms. They raise chickens, goats, and cows.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Egypt is famous for growing ....
   a) bean   b) rice   c) wheat   d) corn
2. Egyptian food is ....
   a) kind   b) happy   c) bad   d) delicious

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do many foods come from? ....
4. What do Egyptian farmers raise? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I don't drink .... (but) other unhealthy food
2. I don't eat unhealthy food, ... (and) I eat healthy food
3. I do exercise .... (but) I study hard
4. Cheng watered the seeds, ... (and) they didn't grow

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- i live in damietta.

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Healthy food

Guiding words:

(healthy - vegetables - cook - chicken - fruit)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

Which - rice - Lunch - raise

Mom : 1) .... is ready.

Maged : It looks delicious!

Mom : 2) .... food comes from our country?

Maged : I think we grow 3) .... in Egypt.

Mom : Why do farmers 4) .... chickens?

Maged : They raise chickens to get eggs and meat.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

important - healthy - sports - food

Dad : Do you think you're 1) .... , Heba?

Heba : Yes, I do a lot of 2) ....

Dad : I think it's 3) .... to do sports.

Heba : Yes, I also eat healthy 4) ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. produce - tomatoes - We - potatoes - and - .

....

2. chickens - in - Farmers - raise - Egypt - .

....

3. the - will - Cheng - be - next - emperor - .

....

4. healthy - do - What - you - things - do - ?

....

5. person - not - The honest - does - lie - .

....



Desert animals

الحيوانات الصحراوية

In this unit the student will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about desert animals.
- practice making comparisons.
- listen to a short story.
- learn about the difference between the [illegible] and [illegible] sounds.
- describe two animals.
- write a fact file.
- research and make a poster.

Lesson (1) ANIMALS IN EGYPT

Egyptian animals

حيوانات مصرية



bird

طائر



lizard

سحلية



insect

حشرة



crocodile

تمساح



eagle

نسر



camel

جمل



fennec fox

ثعلب الفنك



spider

عنكبوت



snake

ثعبان

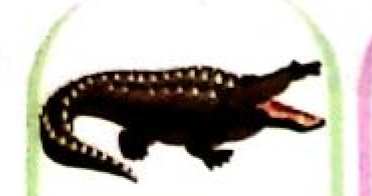
Help your child identify the Egyptian animals and their body parts.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الحيوانات المصرية وأجزاء جسمها





Adjectives صفات









scary	huge	dangerous	cute
مرعب - مخيف	ضخم	خطير	جميل

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

desert	صحراء	country	دولة
important	هام	helpful	متعاون - مفيد
ugly	قبيح	job	وظيفة / مهنة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
control	يتحكم	controlled	like	يحب	liked
agree	يوافق	agreed	think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought
live	يعيش	lived	eat	يأكل	ate

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

I think	أنا أعتقد	What about ...?	ماذا عن... ؟
That's true.	هذا صحيح.	look at	ينظر إلى

Did you know?

The Sahara Desert covers large parts of ten countries in Africa. It is very big, but Antarctica is bigger!

الصحراء الكبرى تغطي أجزاء كبيرة من عشر دول في إفريقيا. فهي كبيرة جدًا ولكن القارة القطبية الجنوبية أكبر.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Mom : Look at all these animals that live in our country.

انظرا إلى كل هذه الحيوانات التي تعيش في بلدنا.

Sara : Look at the crocodile, it's huge!

انظرا إلى التمساح، إنه ضخم.

Tarek : Huge and scary!

ضخم ومخيف!

Sara : I think the spider is scarier.

أعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيفٌ أكثر.

Mom : Yeah, but spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.

نعم و لكن العناكب مفيدة جدًا. إنهم يأكلون الحشرات. المزارعون يحبون العناكب.

Sara : OK, what about the snake and the crocodile? They're dangerous, aren't they?

حسنًا، وماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح؟ إنهما خطيران، أليس كذلك؟

Mom : Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

نعم، هذا صحيح، و لكنهم يقومون بوظيفة هامة للغاية. فهم يأكلون الحشرات والطيور والسحالي، و هذا يتحكم في عدد هذه الحيوانات الصغيرة. أحيانًا نعتقد أن بعض الحيوانات مخيفة أو قبيحة ولكنهم جميعًا ذو أهمية.



Which animals are dangerous?

أي الحيوانات خطيرة؟



I think crocodiles are scary, but they control the numbers of small animals.

أعتقد أن التماسيح مخيفة، لكنهم يتحكمون في عدد الحيوانات الصغيرة.



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.





Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Some animals are .... but they are important.
   a) scary b) huge c) cute d) small
2. The spiders are very helpful to ....
   a) teachers b) farmers c) doctors d) vets
3. Snakes and .... are dangerous.
   a) dolphins b) starfish c) jellyfish d) crocodiles
4. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ....
   a) small b) cute c) ugly d) dangerous

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

animals - crocodiles - scary - important

There are lots of animals living in our country. Sometimes we think some animals are 1) .... or ugly, but they are all important. Snakes and 2) .... are very dangerous, but on the other hand, they do a very 3) .... job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small 4) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Crocodiles are .... animals.
   a) safe b) small c) dangerous d) cute
2. Crocodiles aren't small. They are ....
   a) nice b) small c) cute d) huge
3. The snake is .... I don't like it.
   a) cute b) scary c) small d) nice
4. Spiders eat ....
   a) camels b) snakes c) crocodiles d) insects

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. All animals are ....

a) nice b) cute c) scary d) important

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

There are many animals in our country. All animals are very important. I think spiders are scary, but they are helpful. They eat insects so farmers like spiders. Crocodiles and snakes are dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they're all important.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about ....

a) plants b) animals c) stars d) people

2. Spiders eat insects so .... like them.

a) farmers b) teachers c) doctors d) vets

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Are all animals very important? ....

4. Why are crocodiles and snakes important? ....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:



Animals

Guiding words:

(country - animals - crocodiles - spiders - snakes)

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2) AMAZING DESERT ANIMALS

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

hump	سنام	fur	فرو
feet	أقدام / خفين	sand	رمل
amazing	مذهل	perfect	مناسب / مثالي
delicious	لذيذ	flat	مسطح / مستو
beautiful	جميلة	desert	صحراء

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

make clothes	يصنع ملابس	grass	عشب
elephant	فيل	surprising	مفاجئ - مدهش
fresh water	ماء عذب	noisy	مزعج - صاخب
special	مميز / خاص	strong	قوي
large	كبير الحجم	giraffe	زرافة
without	بدون	hippo	فرس النهر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
carry	يحمل	carried	come	يأتي	came
cross	يعبر	crossed	eat	يأكل	ate
sink	يغوص	sank	drink	يشرب	drank

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get angry	يغضب	perfect for the desert	ملائم للصحراء
Be careful!	كن حذرًا!	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
special ways	طرق خاصة	live without	يعيش بدون
look after	يعتني بـ	stop .... from	يمنع من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Camels



Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes!
Camels are perfect for the desert. Here's why.

الجمال مدهشة! إنها حيوانات جميلة وقوية. وهي تساعدنا في حمل الأشياء والأشخاص ليعبروا الصحراء. ألبانها لذيذة. يمكننا استخدام فرائها لصناعة الملابس! الجمال مثالية للصحراء. إليكم الأسباب:

Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in the sand.



الجمال لديها أقدام كبيرة، مستوية لذلك لا تغوص في الرمال.

Camels can live without water for a long time.

تستطيع الجمال العيش بدون ماء لفترة طويلة.



Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

الجمال لديها طرق خاصة لغلق أنوفها وعيونها لمنع الرمال من الدخول فيها.



But be careful! Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.

ولكن كن حذرًا! الجمال صاخبة جدًا ويمكن أن تغضب.

Horses

Horses have large beautiful eyes.

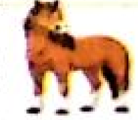
الخيول لديها عيون كبيرة و جميلة.

Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

تستطيع الخيول أن تعيش في الصحراء، لكنها تحتاج إلى أن يعتني بها الناس.

Horses eat grass and drink fresh water

تأكل الخيول الأعشاب وتشرب مياه عذبة.

		Horse 	Camel 
How tall is it?	كم طوله؟	1.4 - 1.8 m	1.8 - 2.0 m
How heavy is it?	كم وزنه؟	380 - 550 kg	400 - 650 kg
How fast is it?	كم سرعته؟	88 kph	65 kph
How long does it live?	كم مدة حياته؟	25 - 30 years	40 years

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ



Language Focus

Comparative Adjectives صفات المقارنة

Usage:

- We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things.

نستخدم صفات المقارنة لنقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Short adjectives

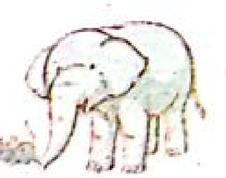
الصفات القصيرة تتكون من مقطع واحد.

Form:

adj. (الصفة) + er + than

strong → stronger than / old → older than

e.g. A mouse is smaller than an elephant.



Spelling rules

1- Short adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.

مع الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e)، نضيف فقط (r) للصفة.

nice → nicer than

e.g. The goat is nicer than the donkey.



Lesson (2)

2- Short adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

مع الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

thin → thinner than   big → bigger than



e.g. The snake is thinner than the crocodile.

3- Short adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بـ (حرف (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن) فإننا نحول الـ (y) إلى (i) ونضيف (er).

noisy → noisier than



e.g. Parrots are noisier than spiders.

Long adjectives

الصفات الطويلة تتكون من مقطعين أو أكثر.

more أكثر / **less** أقل + **long adjective** (صفة طويلة) + **than**

dangerous → more dangerous than
beautiful → more beautiful than
delicious → less delicious than



e.g. A snake is more dangerous than a fox.



e.g. Butter is less delicious than ice cream.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Horses are .... than camels
   a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) the fastest
2. Camels are .... than horses
   a) the tallest b) taller c) tallest d) tall
3. Camels are .... than horses
   a) heaviest b) the heaviest c) heavy d) heavier
4. Snakes are .... than spiders
   a) scary b) the scariest c) scarier d) scariest
5. The elephant is .... than the hippo
   a) the biggest b) bigger c) big d) biggest
6. Cakes are .... than bread
   a) delicious b) more delicious
   c) the most delicious d) most delicious
7. The snake is .... than the fox
   a) the most dangerous b) dangerous
   c) more dangerous d) most dangerous

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The snake is .... (most) dangerous than the fox
2. The elephant is .... (big) than the hippo
3. The giraffe is .... (tall) than the horse
4. A mouse is smaller .... (then) an elephant
5. The fennec fox is .... (small) than the camel
6. Ice cream is .... (most) delicious than butter
7. Parrots are noisier .... (then) spiders
8. I think cats are .... (nice) than dogs
9. Dogs are .... (thin) than elephants

Help your child deal with such questions.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Camels are ....
   a) amazing b) boring c) bad d) useless
2. Their .... is delicious.
   a) water b) milk c) juice d) meat
3. Camels are perfect for the ....
   a) forest b) sea c) grassland d) desert
4. They can live without .... for a long time.
   a) food b) juice c) water d) milk

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The elephant is .... than the mouse.
   a) big b) the biggest c) bigger d) biggest
2. The giraffe is .... than the horse.
   a) tallest b) taller c) the tallest d) tall
3. Are camels .... than horses?
   a) the most beautiful b) beautiful
   c) more beautiful d) most beautiful
4. The fennec fox is .... than the camel.
   a) the smallest b) smaller c) smallest d) small
5. Parrots are .... than spiders.
   a) the noisiest b) noisier c) noisiest d) noisy

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

forest - perfect - desert - strong - milk

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, 1) .... animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the 2) .... Their 3) .... is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes! Camels are 4) .... for the desert. Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in the sand.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. The[y] help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their m[ilk] is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes! Camels a[re] perfect for the desert. Camels can live without water for a lon[g] time.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a) foxes   b) camels   c) elephants   d) horses
2. Camels are .... for the deser[t]
   a) heavy   b) perfect   c) dangerous   d) bad

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How do camels help us? ....
4. What can we do with camels' fur? ....

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- lions are more dangerous than giraffes

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Camel - Horse

Guiding words:

(faster - heavier - stronger - taller)

....

....

....

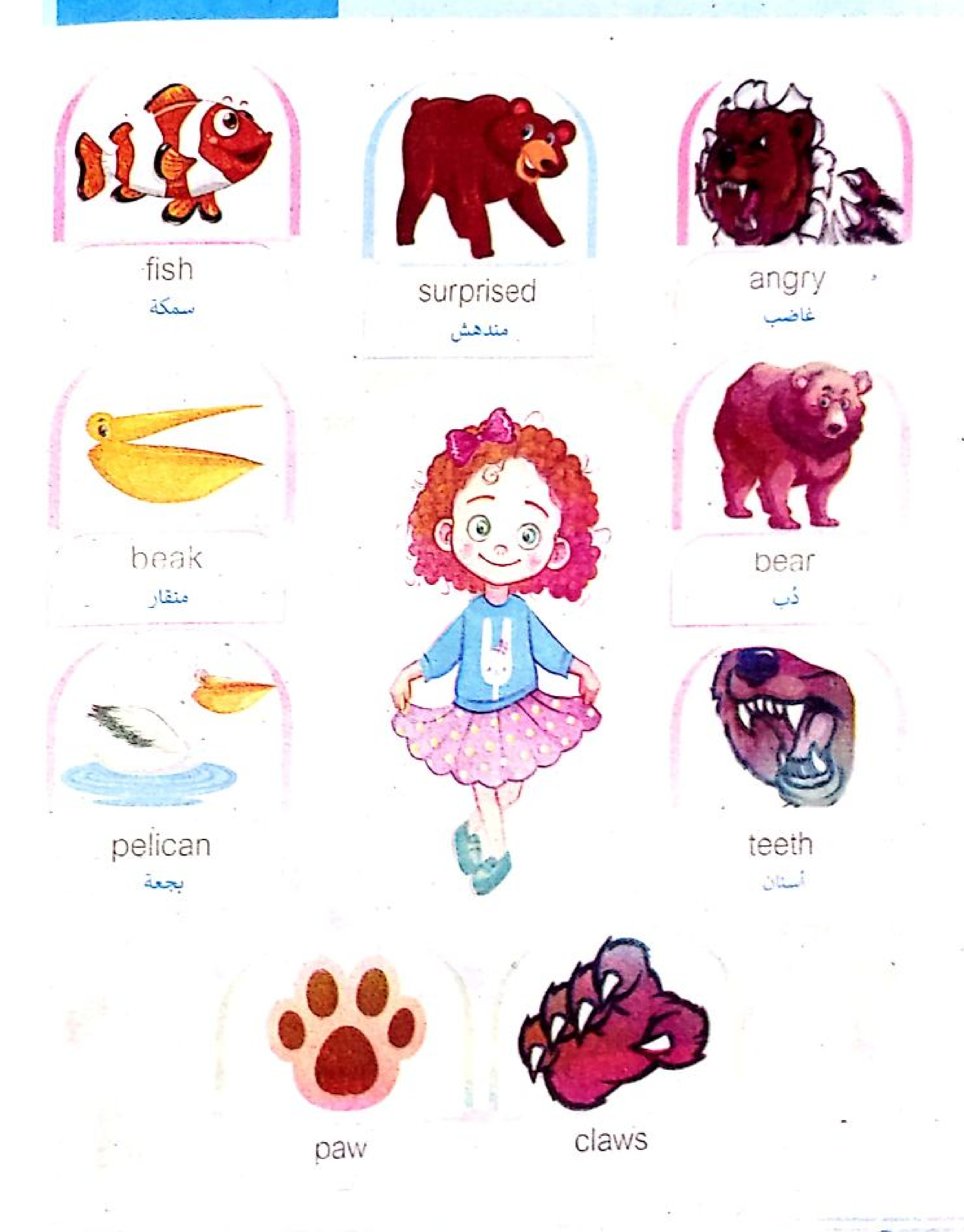
....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) THE PELICAN AND THE BEAR



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Where....?	أين ...؟	juicy	كثير العصارة / طري
Why...?	لماذا....؟	river	نهر
ready	جاهز	kind	طيب - عطوف
hungry	جائع	lift	يرفع
boring	مُمل	interesting	شيق - مثير
sadly	بحزن	fun	متعة
surprised	مندهش	story	قصة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
describe	يصف	described	take	يأخذ	took
look	ينظر	looked	have - has	يمتلك	had
reach	يصل	reached	see	يرى	saw
lift	يرفع	lifted	fly	يطير	flew
think	يعتقد	thought	feel	يشعر	felt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look at	ينظر إلى	right to give	حق أن يعطي
Excuse me!	معذرة!	lift its paw	يرفع كفه
take out of	يخرج الشيء من	kind to	عطوف مع
look scared	يبدو خائفًا	ready to	مستعد لكي

Ask and answer. اسأل وأجب.



Do you like the story?
هل تعجبك القصة؟

No, it is boring.
لا، إنها مملة.



Yes, it is interesting.
نعم، إنها شيقة.

Help your child identify these words.

Lesson (3)

Read and listen. اقرأ واستمع.

The Pelican and the Bear

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear. "Excuse me", the pelican says, "that's my fish".
The bear is surprised and angry.
"Pelican, look at my claws. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish."
The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it says sadly.

بجعة ودب في النهر. إنهما جائعان جدًا. كلاهما ينظر إلى سمكة كبيرة وطرية. يصل الدب إلى السمكة ويرفع كفه. تفتح البجعة منقارها. إنها جاهزة لإخراج السمكة من الماء. يرى الدب البجعة. ترى البجعة الدب. تقول البجعة «معذرة، هذه سمكتي.» الدب مندهش وغاضب. «أيتها البجعة، انظري إلى مخالبي. والآن انظري إلى أسناني. هذه سمكتي.». تبدو البجعة خائفة وتقول بحزن «أنا آسفة أيها الدب».



The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear looks at the pelican. "How do you feel, pelican?" he asks.
"I feel hungry," says Pelican.
"I'm bigger and stronger than you," says Bear.
"But I think you are hungrier than me.
You can have the fish." "Thank you, Bear!" says Pelican.
"You are kinder than all the other bears!"

الدب أقوى من البجعة. ينظر الدب إلى البجعة ويسألها «ما شعورك أيتها البجعة؟» تقول البجعة « أشعر بالجوع».
يقول الدب «أنا أكبر وأقوى منك». «لكنني أعتقد أنك أكثر جوعا مني. «يمكنك تناول السمكة» تقول البجعة «شكرا لك أيها الدب!». «أنت ألطف من كل الدببة الأخرى!»

Help your child read the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

b /b/



bee
نحلة



bear
دب



beak
منقار

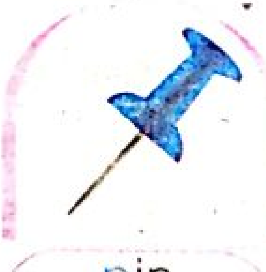


bird
طائر

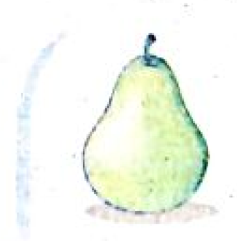
p /p/



peas
بازلاء (بسلة)



pin
دبوس



pear
كمثرى



pelican
بجعة



Write the words in the correct column. Listen and check.

pelican - pear - bee - bird - peas - bear - pin - beak

/b/	/p/
beak	....
....	....
....	....
....	....

Help your child recognize the difference between the /b/ and /p/ sounds.

CLIL : MATH

A fraction is a part of a whole. الكسر هو جزء من (الواحد الصحيح).



$\frac{1}{2}$ — numerator البسط / denominator المقام

Descending order: is to arrange from the largest to the smallest.

الترتيب التنازلي: هو الترتيب من الأكبر إلى الأصغر.

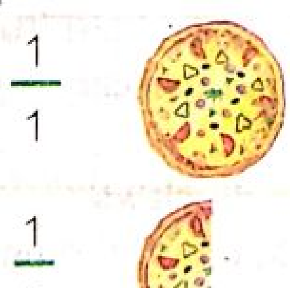
e.g. 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1

e.g. $\frac{1}{1} > \frac{1}{2} > \frac{1}{3} > \frac{1}{4}$



Look and put in a descending order.

$\frac{1}{1}$



$\frac{3}{4}$

$\frac{1}{2}$

$\frac{1}{4}$

Did you know?

We use fractions in everyday life. For example, here's a simple milkshake recipe: $\frac{1}{2}$ a glass of milk, $\frac{1}{4}$ a cup of banana, $\frac{1}{4}$ a cup of vanilla ice cream.

هل تعلم أننا نستخدم الكسور في حياتنا اليومية.

فوصفة عمل الحليب المخفوق بالفاكهة، تتكون من $\frac{1}{2}$ كوب من الحليب و $\frac{1}{4}$ كوب من الموز و $\frac{1}{4}$ كوب من الأيس كريم بالفانيليا.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A pelican and a bear are in the ....
   a) lake b) river c) desert d) forest
2. They are very ....
   a) hungry b) fast c) slow d) thirsty
3. The bear .... for the fish
   a) comes b) goes c) reaches d) finds
4. The pelican open its ....
   a) ear b) eye c) leg d) beak

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The bear has a ....
   a) paw b) hand c) beak d) wing
2. A .... is a fruit
   a) pear b) bear c) bee d) pelican
3. The bear has ....
   a) wings b) feathers c) beaks d) claws
4. The pelican opens its .... to catch the fish
   a) beak b) ear c) paw d) legs
5. They're looking at a big fish . They're ....
   a) surprised b) sad c) hungry d) angry

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

ear - beak - paw - juicy fish - water

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, 1) .... The bear lifts its 2) .... The pelican opens its 3) ....It's ready to take the fish out of the 4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lesson (3)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرا النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are looking at a big juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear is surprised and angry. The bear is stronger than the pelican.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The pelican and the bear are in the ....

   a) park   b) zoo   c) take   d) river

2. They are ....

   a) hungry   b) thirsty   c) tired   d) happy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Which animal is stronger, the bear or the pelican? ....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? ....

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- which animal is angry

....

6 Put in a descending order.

1. $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{3}$ ....
2. $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{1}$ ....
3. $\frac{2}{8}$, $\frac{3}{3}$, $\frac{1}{8}$ ....
4. $\frac{2}{3}$, $\frac{4}{4}$, $\frac{1}{2}$ ....

Lessons (4 & 5)

- WRITING
- PROJECT

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

			
horns قرون	big ears آذان كبيرة	coat فرو حيوان	yellow-white color لون أبيض مائل للصفرة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

rhim gazelle	غزال الريم	dolphin	ولفين
fennec fox	ثعلب الفينك	heat	رارة
the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	mice	ران
mammals	ثدييات	friendly	ود
North Africa	شمال أفريقيا	thick	سميك
warm	دافئ	during	ثناء
male	ذكر	clever	اهر / ذكي
female	أنثى	kind	يع

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look for	يبحث عن	walk around	يتجول
need to	يحتاج إلى	weigh around	زن حوالي
protect from	يحمي من	lose heat	يفقد حرارته
at night	ليلاً	during the day	ثناء النهار

Help your child identify these words.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



Animal fact file



Rhim gazelle

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

تبدو غزلان الريم جميلة للغاية. إنها تعيش في الصحراء الكبرى وتتجول في الأرجاء بحثًا عن العشب وأوراق الشجر والنباتات لتأكلها. لديها آذن كبيرة وقرون طويلة. كما يغطيها فراء - بيضاء مائلة للاصفرار - تحميها من أشعة الشمس. لا تحتاج لشرب الكثير من الماء مثل الجمال.

How long is a rhim gazelle's horn?	كم يبلغ طول قرن غزال الريم؟	20 - 30 cm	٢٠ - ٣٠ سم
How heavy is a rhim gazelle?	كم يبلغ وزن غزال الريم؟	20 - 30 kg	٢٠ - ٣٠ كجم
How long does it live?	كم المدة التي يعيشها؟	about 14 years	حوالي ١٤ عامًا
What color is its coat?	ما لون فرائه؟	yellow-white	لون أبيض يميل إلى الصفرة

Answer the following questions.

1. Where do rhim gazelles live?

....

2. What do they eat?

....

3. How heavy is a rhim gazelle?

....

Help your child read and answer about the fact file.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن ملف الحقائق.

Read, then complete the fact file.

اقرأ ثم أكمل ملف الحقائق.

Dolphins

Dolphins are clever, friendly mammals. There are about 40 kinds of dolphins. They live in hot, warm and cold waters. They are 1.7 - 9.5 m long. They are 50 kg - 10 tons. The males are bigger than the females. They can travel at 29 kph.

How many kinds of dolphins are there? ....

How long are they? ....

How heavy are they? ....

Where do they live? ....

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

The fennec fox

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. It is 20 centimeters high. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It is 30 – 40 centimeters long. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.



Help your child read and complete the fact file.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل ملف الحقائق



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The fennec fox lives in the deserts of .... Africa.
   a) North b) South c) East d) West
2. It's .... than other foxes.
   a) bigger b) smaller c) taller d) shorter
3. The fennec fox needs big .... to hear insects.
   a) ears b) eyes c) legs d) lands
4. It eats insects, lizards and small ....
   a) plants b) fish c) birds d) mice

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

drinks - eats - heat - ears - hot

The fennec fox needs big 1) .... to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox 2) .... insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is 3) .... in the desert. The fennec fox loses 4) .... from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. During the day, it is .... in the desert.
   a) cold b) rainy c) hot d) cool
2. How .... is the rhim gazelle? - It's about 20-30 kg.
   a) often b) heavy c) long d) old
3. Rhim gazelles have yellow-white ....
   a) coats b) horns c) ears d) beak
4. The fennec fox's thick .... keeps it warm.
   a) leg b) fur c) ear d) tail

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water. They live about 14 years.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about ....

   a) **Rhim gazelles** b) **Mice** c) **Dolphins** d) **fennec fox**

2. Rhim gazelles have big ....

   a) **legs** b) **teeth** c) **ears** d) **hands**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What color is the rhim gazelle's coat? ....
4. Do they need to drink a lot of water? ....

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- rhim gazelles look very beautiful

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The fennec fox

Guiding words:

(live - North Africa - smaller - high - weigh)

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Review on Unit (2)

Desert animals

Vocabulary

Animals

camel, eagle, pelican, spider, beak, crocodile, snake, fennec fox, fur, rhim gazelle, horns

Adjectives

big, fast, heavy, beautiful, short, tall, thin, nice, small, noisy

Phonics

b /b/

bee, beak, bird, bear

p /p/

peas, pelican, pin, pear

Language

short + adj. + er + than

A camel is taller than a fennec fox.

An eagle is heavier than a mouse.

more / less + long adj. + than

Crocodiles are more dangerous than horses.

Help your child revise unit (2).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية.







Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

The camel

Camels are strong animals. They help us to carry thin
and people to cross the desert. Camel's milk is delicious. Came
have large, flat feet. They can live without water for
a long time. They are perfect for the desert.

Rhim gazelles

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They walk arou
looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ea
and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect the
from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of wat

The fennec fox

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big ears. It is abo
20 centimeters high. It is about one kilogram. It eats insects
lizards and small animals. It loses heat from its ears. At night it
cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

Help your child write paragraphs.

Dictation on Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

طيور	....	ثعلب الفنك	....
تمساح	....	ثعبان	....
عنكبوت	....	جمل	....
حشرات	....	مخيف	....
سحالي	....	ضخم	....

Lesson (2)

سنام	....	جميل	....
مدهش	....	لذيذ	....
مناسب / مثالي	....	رمل	....
مزعج	....	حصان	....
طويل	....	ثقيل	....
سريع	....	كبير	....

Lesson (3)

دب	....	نحلة	....
يصف	....	بجعة	....
جائع	....	كمثري	....
كف	....	طائر	....
سمكة	....	دبوس	....
أسنان	....	بازلاء (بسلة)	....
مخلب	....	مندهش	....
غاضب	....	منقار	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

قرون	....	فئران	....
فرو	....	يبحث عن	....
آذان كبيرة	....	لون أبيض مائل للصفرة	....

Activities on Unit (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Rhim gazelles look very ....
   a) scary b) beautiful c) sad d) ugly
2. They live in the Sahara ....
   a) Cave b) Mountain c) Hill d) Desert
3. They eat .... , leaves and plan
   a) fish b) insects c) grass d) birds
4. They have big ears and long ....
   a) horns b) tails c) hair d) legs

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Horses eat .... and drink fresh wa
   a) fish b) grass c) birds d) animals
2. The pelican eats small ....
   a) elephant b) fish c) crocodiles d) camels
3. Crocodiles are huge and ....
   a) nice b) scary c) beautiful d) friendly
4. A pelican opens its .... to eat the fi
   a) claw b) beak c) paw d) leg

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

grass -Spiders - dangerous - scary - insects

In our country, there are many animals. There are crocodiles. They're huge and 1) ....
2) .... are very helpful. They
3) .... Snakes are v
4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

Activities

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Dolphins are extremely clever animals. They are cute, not dangerous. There are around 40 kinds of dolphins. They never chew their food. They live in water. They are mammals, not fish. They can swim very fast. They use their tails to move faster. They can live for 10-45 years. They eat fish, shrimps, jellyfish and octopuses.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Dolphins are .... animals.
   a) **dangerous** b) **scary** c) **clever** d) **ugly**
2. Dolphins are ....
   a) **plants** b) **birds** c) **mammals** d) **insects**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
4. What do dolphins eat? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The bear is .... (strong) than the pelican.
2. The lion is .... (most) dangerous than the giraffe.
3. Ali is taller .... (that) Ahmed.
4. Horses are .... (fast) than camels.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- does Tarek like crocodiles

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The rhim gazelle

Guiding questions:

-Where does it live? -What does it eat? -What color is its coat?

....

....

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

أكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

What - farmers - insects - scary

Tarek : Look at that spider.
Sara : Wow! It's 1) ....
Tarek : Yeah, but spiders are very helpful.
Sara : 2) .... do they
Tarek : They eat small 3) ....
Sara : Do 4) .... like spic
Tarek : Yes, they do.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

control - scary - Crocodiles - helpful

Tarek : Do you like animals?
Sara : Of course. They are 1) ....
Tarek : Which animals are 2) ....
Sara : 3) .... are sc
Tarek : Are crocodiles helpful?
Sara : Yes, they 4) .... the number of small anim

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

رتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. are - than - Camels - horses - taller - .

....

2. is - fox - How - heavy - the fennec - ?

....

3. more - than - Lions - giraffes - dangerous - are - .

....

4. than - heavier - The cat - the mouse - is - .

....

5. than - is - The pelican - smaller - the bear - .

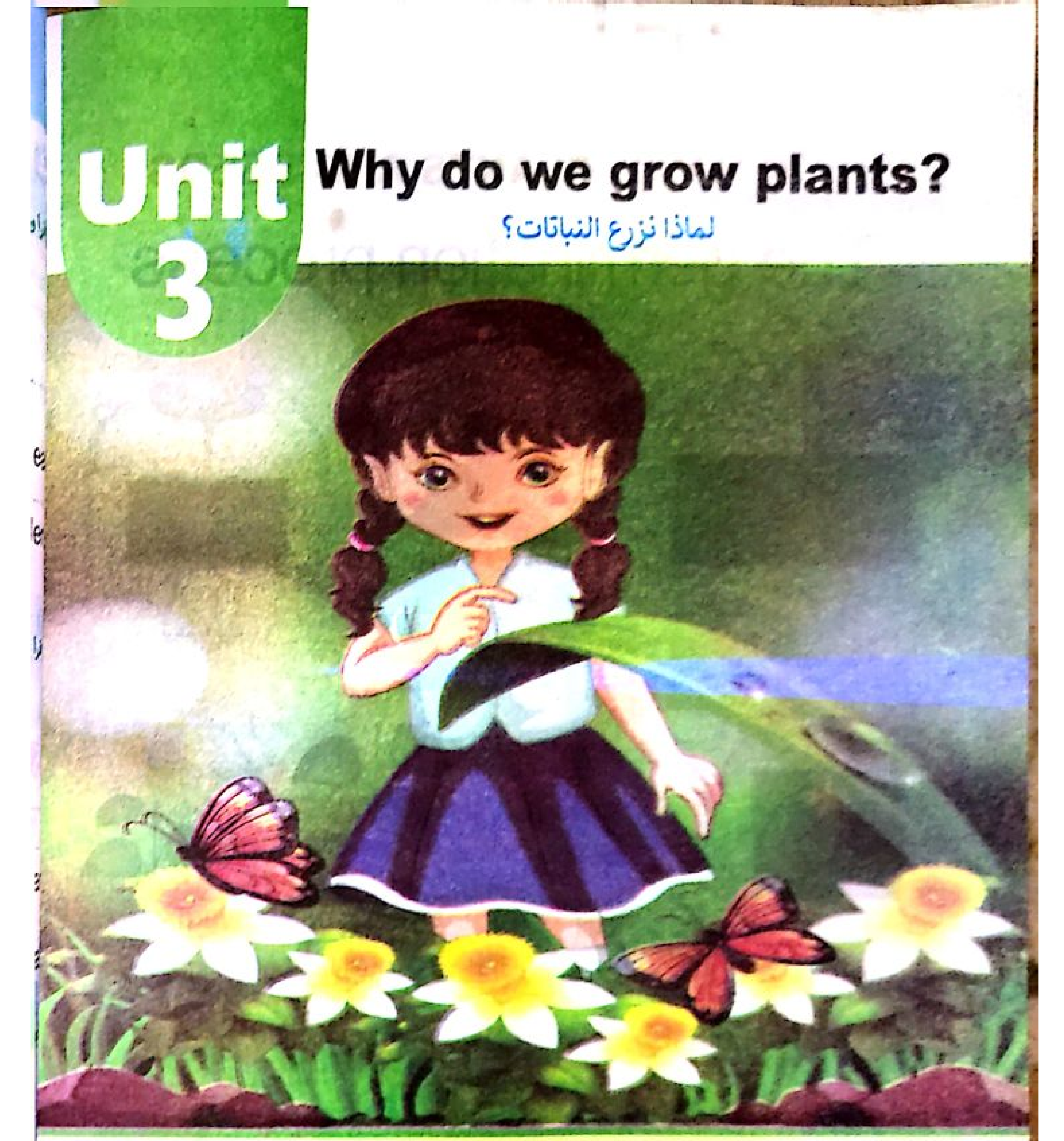
....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

لماذا نزرع النباتات؟



In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف......

- listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.
  سيستمع و يقرأ و يبحث ويكتب عن النباتات وكيف تساعدنا.
- practice making sentences with the superlatives.
  يتدرب على تكوين جمل باستخدام (صفات التفضيل).
- read, listen to, and understand a short story.
  يقرأ ويستمع ويفهم قصة قصيرة.
- learn about and say words with the consonant blends /[illegible]/ and /[illegible]/.
  يتعلم عن وينطق الكلمات التي تحتوي على صوت الحروف الساكنة المدمجة /fl/ و/sw/.
- write the life cycle of a sunflower.
  يكتب دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.
- research and write a report.
  يقوم بالبحث وكتابة تقرير.

The germination process

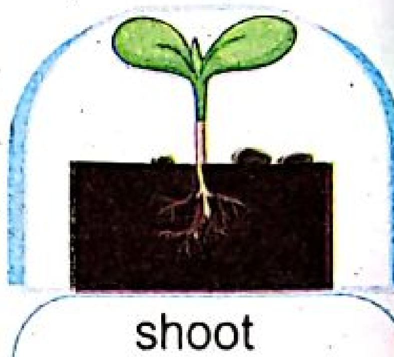
عملية الإنبات



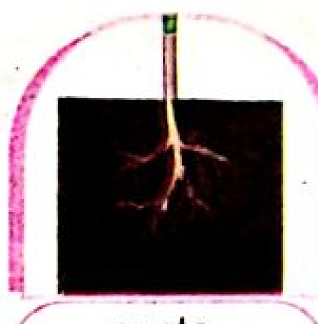
soil
تربة زراعية



seeds
بذور



shoot
بُرعم / نبته



roots
جذور



leaf
ورقة شجر



leaves
أوراق الشجر



flower
زهرة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

plants	نباتات	inside	داخل
is called	يُسمى	awesome	رائع / مدهش
balcony	بلكونة / شرفة	process	عملية
new	جديد	before	قبل
under	تحت	tomato fruits	ثمار الطماطم

Help your child identify these words.



Lesson (1)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
look	ينظر	looked
water	يسقي	watered
die	يموت	died
plant	يزرع	planted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
grow	ينمو	grew
find	يجد	found
become	يصبح	became
take	يأخذ	took

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

above the soil	فوق التربة	is called	يُدعى / يُسمى
under the soil	تحت التربة	on the balcony	في البلكونة
Let's have it for lunch!	هيا نتناولها على الغذاء!	That's awesome!	هذا مدهش!

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

"The Germination Process"

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

«عملية الإنبات»
نحن نضع البذرة في التربة. البذرة تحتاج لضوء الشمس والمياه حتى تستطيع أن تنمو. البذرة تنتج جذور تحت التربة. ثم تنمو النبتة وتصبح أطول فوق التربة. في النهاية، النبات الكامل ينمو كأوراق شجر وأزهار.

Did you know ....?

that we eat this cacao seed?
هل كنت تعلم أننا نتناول بذرة الكاكاو هذه؟
Chocolate comes from this plant.
الشيكولاتة تُنتج من هذا النبات.



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen, read and role-play.

استمع و اقرأ ثم تبادل الأدوار.

Dad	:	Come and look! تعال وانظر!
Seleem	:	What is it, Dad? ما هذا يا أبي؟
Dad	:	Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers? تنمو نباتات الطماطم الخاصة بنا في الشرفة (البلكونة)! انظر ،هل تستطيع أن ترى الأوراق والأزهار؟
Seleem	:	Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green? أوه، نعم، لكن لماذا حبات الطماطم خضراء؟
Dad	:	Tomatoes are green before they are red. تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تصبح حمراء.
Seleem	:	How do we grow new tomatoes? كيف نزرع طماطم جديدة؟
Dad	:	Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits. تحتوي الطماطم على بذور بداخلها. يمكن أن نأخذ البذور ونزرع طماطم جديدة. نحن نزرع البذرة والنبات ينمو. تلك العملية تسمى بعملية الإنبات. نحن نسقي النبات كل يوم فتنمو الجذور تحت التربة. النبات يُنبت زهورًا والزهور تصبح ثمار طماطم.
Seleem	:	That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch! هذا رائع! وأنا وجدت ثمرة طماطم حمراء! هيا نتناولها على الغداء!



Why do you think a plant dies?

في رأيك لماذا يموت النبات؟

Help your child listen, read and rol-play.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ و يتبادل الأدوار.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Tomatoes are .... and important.
   a) **delicious** b) **bad** c) **red** d) **green**
2. We use tomatoes in most of our ....
   a) **drinks** b) **food** c) **sports** d) **study**
3. Everyone can grow tomatoes on their ....
   a) **bedroom** b) **bathroom** c) **balcony** d) **kitchen**
4. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a) **seeds** b) **leaves** c) **roots** d) **shoots**

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

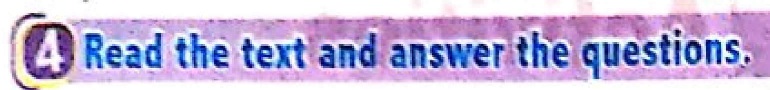
1. Our tomato plants are .... on the balcony!
   a) **playing** b) **growing** c) **reading** d) **watering**
2. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
   a) **gray** b) **yellow** c) **green** d) **black**
3. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a) **reeds** b) **leaves** c) **shoots** d) **seeds**
4. The .... grow under the soil.
   a) **flowers** b) **shoots** c) **roots** d) **leaves**
5. When we plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called .....
   a) **germination** b) **destination**
   c) **determination** d) **information**

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

green - flowers - shoot - seed - sunlight

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs 1) .... and water so it can grow. The 2) .... grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a 3) .... and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and 4) ....



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The main idea of the text ....

   a) tomatoes germination   b) cutting tomatoes
   c) eating tomatoes   d) selling tomatoes

2. Tomatoes are .... before they are red

   a) yellow   b) green   c) black   d) white

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do roots grow? ....

4. What do tomatoes have inside? ....

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية

- how do we grow new tomatoes

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Plants and seeds

Guiding words:

(tomatoes - grow - roots)

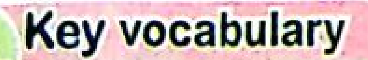
....

....

....

....

Lesson (2) PLANTS IN EGYPT



Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

Listen and repeat. استمع و ردد



lotus flower
زهرة اللوتس



bean plant
نبات الفول



orange tree
شجرة البرتقال



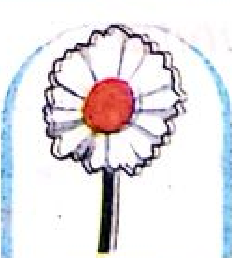
sunflower
زهرة عباد الشمس



rose
وردة



reed
نبات البوص



daisy
زهرة اللؤلؤ «الأقحوان»



acacia
شجرة السنط



tamarisk
شجرة الطرفاء

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

heavy	ثقيل	lake	بحيرة
about / around	حوالي	rain	مطر
butterfly	فراشة	near	قريب
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	need	يحتاج
beetle	خنفساء	habitat	موطن / بيئة
agricultural	زراعي	river	نهر
colorful	ملون	work	يعمل
maize	ذرة	eggplant	الباذنجان

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

واقرأ.

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow.

ن هو المكان الذي تعيش وتنمو فيه الكائنات الحية.

Desert habitat البيئة الصحراوية

There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار هنا، النباتات التي تعيش في الصحراء لا تحتاج إلى ماء كثير.



Rivers and lakes الأنهار والبحيرات

Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

النباتات الموجودة بالقرب من الأنهار والبحيرات تحتاج إلى ماء كثير.



Agricultural habitat البيئة الزراعية

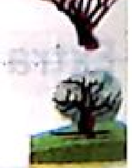
Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.

يعمل المزارعون هنا. فهم يقومون بزراعة الطعام من أجلنا لنأكله.



Read and learn.

وتعلم.

Rivers and lakes	Agricultural habitat	Desert habitat
lotus flower	orange tree 	acacia 
reed 	bean plant	tamarisk

Look and read the fact file.

واقرأ ملف الحقائق.

	daisy	rose	
How big is the flower?	2.5 - 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 - 15 cm
How tall is it?	10 cm	60 cm	1 - 3.5 m
How long does it live?	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 wee
How heavy is it?	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200

 Help your child read about habitats.

Language Focus

Superlative Adjectives صفات التفضيل

Usage:

- We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group.

نستخدم صفات التفضيل لمقارنة شخص أو شيء مع مجموعة أخرى.

Form:

1 Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

the + adj. الصفة + est

tall → the tallest

e.g. The reed is the tallest.



Spelling rules:

1 Short adjectives ending in (-e), only add (-st).

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف (e) ، نضيف لها (st-) فقط .

nice → the nicest

e.g. My city is the nicest place to live.

2 Short adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant, then add (est).

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ثم نضيف (est) .

big → the biggest   thin → the thinnest

e.g. My cat is the biggest in our street.

3 Short adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف y مسبوقا بحرف ساكن، نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

easy → the easiest   heavy → the heaviest

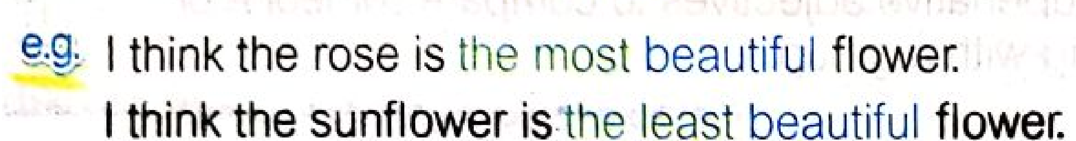
e.g. I have the heaviest suitcase.

2 Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

the most الأكثر / the least الأقل + adj. الصفة



beautiful ⟶ the most beautiful



e.g. I think the rose is the most beautiful flower.
I think the sunflower is the least beautiful flower.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The giraffe is the .... land animal.
   a) the tallest b) taller c) tallest d) tall
2. The cheetah is .... land animal.
   a) the fastest b) fast c) fastest d) faster
3. The elephant is .... land animal.
   a) the heaviest b) heavy c) heavier d) heaviest
4. The rose is the .... flower.
   a) more beautiful b) beautiful
   c) the most beautiful d) most beautiful
5. My city is the .... place to live.
   a) the nicest b) nice c) nicest d) nicer

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The elephant is the .... (big) animal.
2. The bean is the .... (small) plant.
3. The snake is the .... (scary) animal.
4. The rose is the .... (more) beautiful flower.
5. My cat is the .... (nice) in our street.
6. The lion is the .... (more) dangerous animal.

Help your child learn superlative adjectives.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم صفات التفضيل.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There are many habitats in ....
   a) Egypt b) France c) China d) USA
2. In .... habitats, farmers work and grow food.
   a) agricultural b) desert c) rivers d) lakes
3. In the desert habitat, there is no much ....
   a) wind b) animals c) sand d) rain
4. Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of ....
   a) water b) sun c) soil d) wind

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The desert is the .... habitat.
   a) hot b) the hottest c) hotter d) hottest
2. The rose is bigger than the daisy, but the sunflower is the ....
   a) the biggest b) big c) bigger d) biggest
3. Ahmed is the .... in his class..
   a) tall b) the tallest c) tallest d) taller
4. The daisy is the .... flower.
   a) more colorful b) most colorful
   c) colorful d) less colorful
5. This is the .... lesson.
   a) Important b) more important
   c) most important d) less important
6. The reed is the .... plant.
   a) tall b) the tallest c) taller d) tallest
7. This is the .... flower in the garden.
   a) less beautiful b) beautiful
   c) most beautiful d) more beautiful
8. Amira is the .... girl in our class.
   a) more nice b) nice c) nicer d) nicest

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The agricultural habitat is very beautiful. Farmers grow vegetables and fruit. They grow bean plants and orange trees. The desert habitat is too hot. There is not much rain. Plants that grow in the desert do not need a lot of water. Acacia and tamarisk trees can grow in the desert. Lotus flowers and reeds grow near rivers and lakes as they need a lot of water.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Acacia trees grow in the ....

   a) **desert** b) **forest** c) **rivers** d) **lakes**

2. There isn't much .... in the desert

   a) **heat** b) **rain** c) **sand** d) **ice**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do reeds grow? ....
4. Do desert plants need a lot of water? ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Elephants are the .... (big) land animals
2. Crocodiles are the .... (more) dangerous
3. Ali is the .... (tall) boy in the class
4. The sunflower is .... (that) tallest flower
5. Aya is the .... (more) beautiful girl
6. Hani is the .... (fast) boy
7. This bag is the .... (heavy)
8. The rose is the .... (nice) flower here

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- what's the most beautiful flower

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Flowers

Guiding words:

(flowers - tallest - most beautiful - most colorful)

....

....

....

....

....

7 Complete the table. أكمل الجدول.

....	taller than	the tallest
big	....	....
heavy	....	the heaviest
....	....	the most beautiful

Lesson (3) LUCAS AND HIS FARM

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

a million	مليون	a billion	مليار	dry	ف
farm	مزرعة	land	أرض	noise	وضاء

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

grandparents	أجداد	difficult	صعب	special	يز
the United States	الولايات المتحدة (الأمريكية)	hard	صعب/شاق	life	ياة
rainwater	مياه الأمطار	important	مهم	liter	ر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
pollute	يلوث	polluted
work	يعمل	worked
decide	يقرر	decided
need	يحتاج	needed
plant	يزرع	planted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
bring	يحضر	brought
grow	يزرع	grew
buy	يشتري	bought
am - is	يكون	was
make	يصنع	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the farm	في المزرعة	work very hard	يعمل بجد
have a good life	يحيا حياة جيدة	proud of	فخور بـ
want to	يريد أن	at first	في بداية الأمر
decide to	يقرر أن	buy some land	يشترى بعض الأرض

Help your child identify these words.

عد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Look, listen and read.

انظر و استمع و اقرأ.

Lucas and his farm



Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. It is a very special farm. Forty years ago, the land was very dry. There were no farms. No one wanted to live there. Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the polluted air and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.

يعيش لوكاس في مزرعة في الولايات المتحدة. إنها مزرعة مميزة جدًا. منذ أربعين عامًا، كانت الأرض جافة جدًا، لم يكن هناك مزارع. لم يكن أحد يريد العيش هناك. كان أجداد لوكاس يعيشان في المدينة لكنهما لم يعجبهما ذلك. لم يعجبهما الهواء الملوث والضجيج و أرادا أن يمتلكا مزرعة وقررا شراء بعض الأراضي.

At first, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They needed about a billion liters of water a year. They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They brought animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.

في البداية كانت الحياة صعبة جدًا. لقد عملوا بجد وزرعوا ملايين البذور و استخدموا مياه الأمطار ليسقوا البذور. كانوا بحاجة إلى حوالي مليار لتر من الماء في السنة. لقد زرعوا الكثير من الفاكهة مثل البرتقال والليمون و جلبوا الحيوانات إلى الأرض و زرعوا الأشجار والزهور.

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

و اليوم يعيش لوكاس في المزرعة مع والدته ووالده و هم سعداء جداً ويعيشون حياة جيدة و هم فخورون جدًا بأجداد لوكاس. وقاموا باستخدام النباتات لجعل الأرض خضراء.

CLIL : MATH

Large numbers up to billions

الأرقام الكبيرة حتى المليارات

Egypt wants to plant more than 100 million palm trees across the country. This means we need to plant billions of seeds.

مصر تريد زراعة أكثر من ١٠٠ مليون من أشجار النخيل في جميع أنحاء البلاد. هذا يعني أننا بحاجة إلى زرع مليارات البذور.



Note: A billion is a thousand million: 1,000,000,000.

المليار = ألف مليون (١,٠٠٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠)

Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1)	1,000,000,000	a)	a thousand
2)	100,000,000	b)	ten thousand
3)	1,000	c)	a billion
4)	100,000	d)	a hundred million
5)	10,000	e)	a hundred thousand



Help your child identify large numbers up to billions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأرقام الكبيرة حتى المليارات.

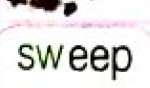
Lesson (3)

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

/sw/





swim	sweep	swan	sweets	switch
يسبح	يكنس	بجعة	حلوى	مفتاح كهربي

/sl/







slice	slippers	sleep
شريحة	نعال (شبشب)	ينام

The suffix (-ful)

اللاحقة



The suffix (-ful) means "full of". It's used at the end of many adjectives. اللاحقة "-ful" تعني (كثير من) وتستخدم في نهاية كثير من الصفات.

Word الكلمة			Adjective الصفة	
beauty	الجمال	→	beautiful	جميل
care	عناية / اهتمام	→	careful	حريص
color	لون	→	colorful	ملون - زاهٍ
help	يساعد	→	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	→	useful	مفيد

Help your child identify the consonant blends /sw/ and /sl/ and the suffix (-ful).
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأصوات الساكنة المدمجة /sl/ و /sw/ واللاحقة (ful-).



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Lucas lives on a ....
   a) lake b) farm c) city d) town
2. Forty years ago, the .... was very d
   a) sky b) land c) desert d) farm
3. Lucas's .... lived in the c
   a) grandparents b) parents c) uncle d) aunt
4. They wanted to have a ....
   a) car b) house c) school d) farm

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

تخير الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Lucas lives .... a farm in the United Stat
   a) at b) on c) in d) to
2. Why is it important to turn desert land into ....
   a) wasteland b) island c) wetland d) farm land
3. They grew many .... like oranges and lemo
   a) vegetables b) drinks c) fruits d) foods
4. I don't like the story. It's ....
   a) interesting b) funny c) boring d) exciting
5. A .... is a thousand millio
   a) million b) billion c) thousand d) hundred

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

car - millions - flowers - land - farm

I'm Ali. My grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't li
it. They wanted to have a 1) .... They decided to buy sor
2) .... They plant
3) .... of seeds. They planted trees a
4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Khaled lives on a farm in Egypt. It's a very beautiful farm. Khaled's grandparents wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They worked very hard. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They grew fruits and brought animals. They were very happy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Khaled's grandparents brought ....

   a) plants b) animals c) cars d) birds

2. Khaled's grandparents worked very ....

   a) hard b) bad c) right d) easy

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Khaled live? ....
4. What did Khaled's grandparents use to water the seeds? ....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- lucas lives in the United States

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Grandparents' farm

Guiding words:

(farm - fruit - trees - animals - seeds)

....
....
....
....

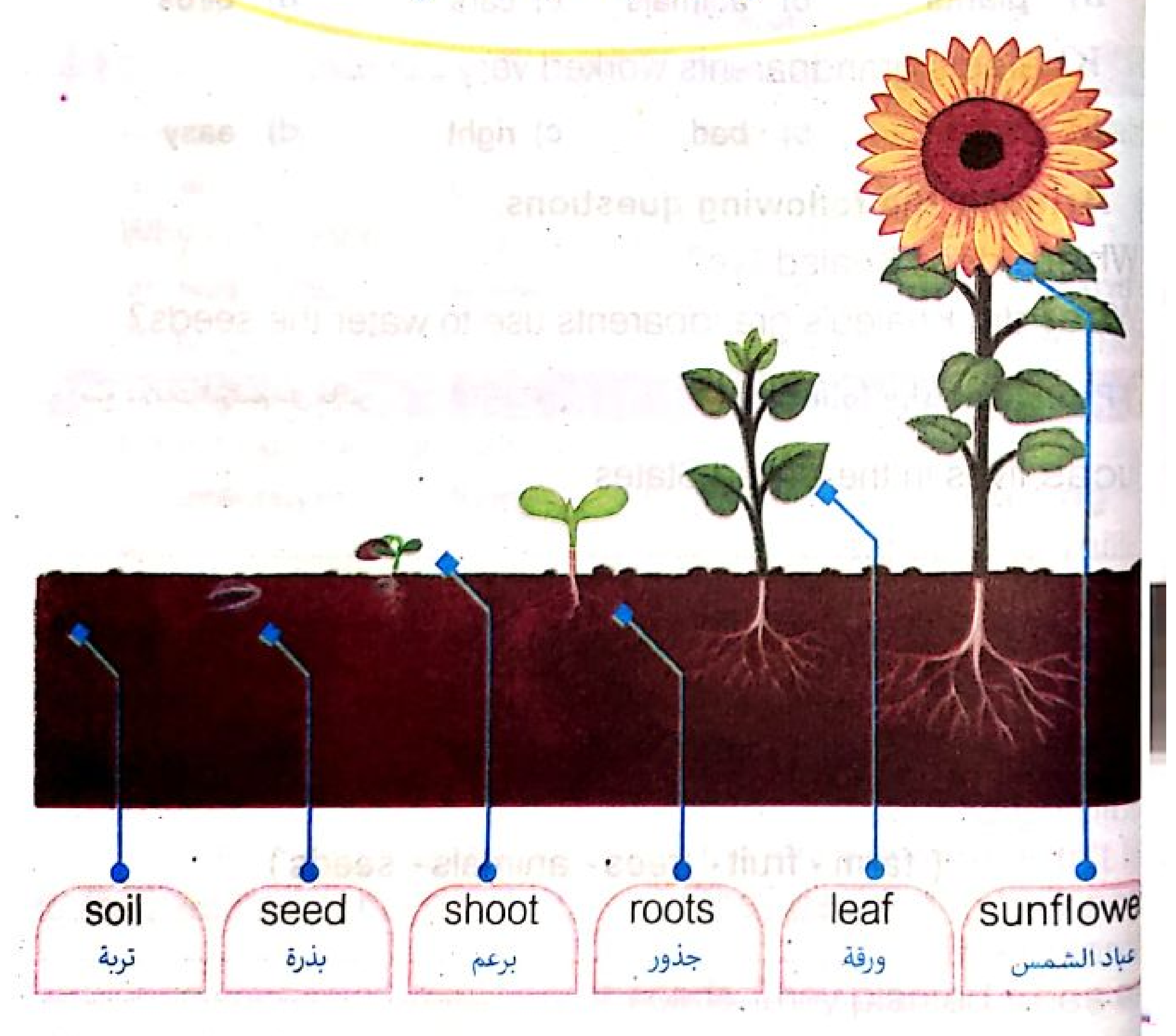
Lessons (4 & 5) WRITING PROJECT

Vocabulary

Listen, point and say. ...ع وأشر وقل.

The life cycle of a sunflower

دورة حياة نبات عباد الشمس



Help your child identify the life cycle of a sunflow...

...ك أن يتعرف على دورة حياة نبات عباد الشمس.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Key vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	first	أولًا	after	بعد
papyrus	نبات البردي	next	ثم	finally	في النهاية
germinate	ينبت	after that	بعد ذلك		

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	baskets	سلال	again	مرة أخرى
paper	ورق	sandals	صندل	drop	يسقط
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	famous	مشهور	process	عملية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
drop	يُسقِط	dropped
start	يبدأ	started

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
put	يضع	put
begin	يبدأ	began

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

under the soil	تحت التربة	face the sun	يواجه الشمس
get taller	يزداد طوله	grow quickly	ينمو بسرعة
near the river	بالقرب من النهر	warm weather	طقس دافئ

Writing tip! When we talk about the life cycle of a plant, we use some sequence words.

عندما نتحدث عن دورة حياة نبات، نستخدم بعض الكلمات الدالة على تسلسل الأحداث.



Look and read. ر واقرأ.

The life cycle of a sunflower



1

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. Water the seed.

أولًا تزرع بذرة عباد الشمس في التربة. واسق البذرة.

2

Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

م تنمو البذرة وتبدأ جذورها في النمو أسفل التربة.



3

After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.

بعد ذلك، تنمو النبتة فوق التربة وتنبت أوراقًا وتزداد طولًا.



4

After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.

حوالي ٤ شهور، تتفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه
نس.



5

Finally the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

النهاية تموت زهرة عباد الشمس وتُسقط بذورها لتبدأ دورة الحياة من جديد.

Help your child use sequence words.

د طفلك أن يستخدم الكلمات الدالة على تسلسل الأحداث.

Lessons (4 & 5)

The life cycle of a tomato

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



1. First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You water it.

أولا ، تزرع بذرة الطماطم في التربة. وتقوم بسقيها بالماء.

2. Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

ثم ، تنبت البذرة ، وتبدأ في نمو الجذور تحت التربة.

3. After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows taller.

بعد ذلك ، تنمو النبتة فوق التربة. وتنمو أطول.

4. After a few weeks, the plant grows leaves, flowers, and tomatoes.

بعد بضعة أسابيع ، ينمو من النبات أوراق وزهور و طماطم.

5. Finally, the tomato plant dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

في النهاية ، يموت نبات الطماطم ويسقط بذوره. و تبدأ العملية مرة أخرى.

Help your child identify the life cycle of a tomato.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على دورة حياة نبات الطماطم.

Look and read.

A REPORT ABOUT A PLANT

Papyrus

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.



نبات البردي هو نبات مميز جداً . وهو مشهور لأن المصريين القدماء استخدموا نبات البردي لصنع الورق و صنعوا أيضًا الصنادل والسلال من نبات البردي.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

يحتاج نبات البردي الكثير من الماء والجو الدافئ لينمو بسرعة. و ينمو في دلتا النيل بالقرب من النهر.

Find a plant, search and write its life cycle. Then draw.

1) First, you ....
....
2) Next, ...
....
3) After that ....
....
4) After, ...
....
5) Finally, ...
....

Help your child read about papyrus.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن نبات البردي.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Papyrus is a very special ....
   a) animal b) bird c) plant d) fish
2. Papyrus is ...... because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.
   a) famous b) good c) bad d) strong
3. They also made sandals and .... from papyrus.
   a) pots b) pans c) baskets d) spoons
4. Papyrus needs a lot of ....
   a) water b) milk c) juice d) ice

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The sunflower opens and faces the ....
   a) sun b) Earth c) moon d) star
2. The sunflower grows .... They are green.
   a) leaves b) seeds c) shoots d) roots
3. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....
   a) homes b) food c) paper d) wood
4. Ancient Egyptians made baskets from ....
   a) cotton b) trees c) papyrus d) iron
5. Papyrus needs .... weather.
   a) cold b) ice c) cool d) warm

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

trees - After that - Next - leaves - sunlight

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in 1) .... and water it. 2) ...., the seed germinates and starts to grow roots under the soil. 3) ...., the shoot grows above the soil. It grows 4) .... It gets taller.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

To plant a sunflower, first, you plant the sunflower seed in the soil. Then you water it. Next, the seed germinates and it starts grow roots under the soil. After that, the shoot grows above the s... After about 4 months, it opens and faces the sun.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. .... , you plant the sunflower seed in the s...
   a) First b) After c) After that d) Finally
2. You .... the se...
   a) eat b) water c) drink d) cut

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do the roots grow? ....
4. When does it open and face the sun? ....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- papyrus is a very special plant

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The lifecycle of a tomato

Guiding words:

(seed - sunlight - roots - shoot)

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد ابنك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Review on Unit (3)

Why do we grow plants?

Vocabulary | Math | Phonics | Language

Plants

soil, seeds, roots, shoot, reeds

flower, acacia, leaf, lotus flower

sunflower, tamarisk, daisy

bean plant, orange tree

Large numbers

1,000	100,000	1,000,000
a thousand	a hundred thousand	a million
10,000,000	100,000,000	
ten million	a hundred million	
1,000,000,000		
a billion		

/sl/

slice, sleep, slippers

/sw/

switch, swim, sweets, sweep, swan

Suffix (-ful):
beauti**ful**, color**ful**, use**ful**, care**ful**, help**ful**

Language

the + short adj. +est

The sunflower is the biggest flower.

A coconut is the heaviest seed.

the most / least + long adj.

What is the most beautiful flower?





Egyptian plants

Egypt has many kinds of plants. Some plants grow in the desert such as the acacia tree and the tamarisk tree. Other plants grow near rivers and lakes such as the lotus flower and the reeds. Farmers grow other plants on farms such as bean plants and orange trees.

Germination process

To grow any plant, we follow some steps. First, we put the seeds in soil. Next, we water the seed. The seed germinates. Then, the roots grow under the soil and the shoot grows above the soil. We water the plant. After that, the plant has a flower. Finally, the flowers become fruits.

Papyrus

Papyrus is an important plant. It's a very special plant. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They used papyrus to make sandals and baskets, too. Papyrus needs a lot of water so it grows in the Nile Delta near the river. Papyrus needs warm weather to grow quickly.

Help your child write paragraphs.

طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

Dictation on Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

برعم - نبتة	....	جذور	....
ورقة شجر	....	بذور	....
زهرة	....	تربة	....
بلكونة	....	يسقي	....
ينمو	....	نباتات	....

Lesson (2)

وردة	....	زهرة عباد الشمس	....
نبات الفول	....	زهرة اللوتس	....
شجرة البرتقال	....	شجرة السنط	....
شجرة الطرفاء	....	نبات البوص/القصب	....
فراشة	....	ثقيل	....
يحتاج	....	مطر	....

Lesson (3)

مليون	....	مليار	....
يسبح	....	يكنس	....
بجعة	....	حلوى	....
مفتاح كهربي	....	ينام	....
شبشب - نعال	....	شريحة	....
مزرعة	....	أرض	....
مهم	....	أجداد	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

المصريون القدماء	....	نبات البردي	....
أولًا	....	ثم	....
بعد ذلك	....	بعد	....
أخيرًا	....	ينبت	....
سلال	....	مشهور	....
ضوء الشمس	....	ورق	....

Activities on Unit (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d. استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... is a very special plan
   a) Papyrus b) Corn c) Wheat d) Maize
2. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....
   a) pots b) paper c) walls d) homes
3. Papyrus needs a lot of ....
   a) milk b) juice c) oil d) water
4. Papyrus needs .... weathe
   a) cold b) hot c) warm d) ice

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There is not much rain in the .... habita
   a) desert b) forest c) river d) lake
2. I tidy my room and I .... the floo
   a) cut b) sweep c) sleep d) slice
3. Tomatoes have .... inside
   a) leaves b) seeds c) roots d) shoots
4. A billion is a .... millio
   a) thousand b) hundred c) ten d) million

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

leaves - waters - seeds - green - roots

My friend Seleem likes farms and plants. He likes the 1) .... color of the leaves. He likes to use th 2) .... to grow new plants. He 3) .... the plant every day. The 4) .... grow under the soil. My friend become very happy when there is a flower.

Activities

4 **Read the text and answer the questions.** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a) seeds   b) roots   c) leaves   d) fruit
2. When we plant a seed, the plant ....
   a) gives   b) grows   c) dies   d) sleeps

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text? ....
4. What can we do with the seeds? ....

5 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. My city is the .... (nice) place to live in.
2. I think a rose is the .... (more) beautiful flower.
3. What is the .... (scary) animal in the world?
4. My bag is the .... (big).



6 **Punctuate the following.** ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي

- where do you live, Ahmed

....

7 **Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**
اكتب فقرة الثمانية من (18) كلمة عن:

The life cycle of a tomato plant

Guiding words:

(seeds - water - roots - flowers - tomatoes)

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

balcony - is - found - tomatoes

Dad	:	Come and look!
Seleem	:	What 1) .... it, Dad
Dad	:	Our tomato plants are growing on the 2) ....
Seleem	:	Oh yes, but why are the 3) .... green
Dad	:	Tomatoes are green before they are red.
Seleem	:	That's awesome! And I 4) .... a red tomato

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

seed - shoots - plant - soil

Omar	:	What is this, Dad?
Dad	:	It is a sunflower.
Omar	:	How do we 1) .... a new sunflower
Dad	:	We put the sunflower 2) .... in soil and water i
Omar	:	Where do the 3) .... grow
Dad	:	The shoots grow above the 4) ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

1. big - flower - How - the - is - ?

....

2. the - grow - Roots - soil - under - .

....

3. above - soil - The shoot - the - grows - .

....

4. plant - does - Where - the - grow - ?

....

Activities on Review (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Damietta is an Egyptian ....
   a) farm b) center c) governorate d) museum
2. Its land is .... in nutrients.
   a) rich b) poor c) empty d) silent
3. .... catch thousands of fish.
   a) Farmers b) Fishermen c) Teachers d) Doctors
4. Life is .... in Damietta.
   a) dirty b) ugly c) bad d) good

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I need to .... my homework.
   a) redo b) reclean c) repaint d) recycle
2. Crocodiles are .... animals.
   a) safe b) nice c) good d) scary
3. The roots grow .... the soil.
   a) on b) under c) above d) next
4. Camels are .... for the desert.
   a) bad b) sad c) happy d) perfect

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

black - germination - flowers - green - seed

Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! They have leaves and 1) .... Tomatoes are 2) .... before they are red. We plant a 3) .... and the plant grows. That is called 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

I love camels. They are very important animals in Egypt. The are strong and they can carry people and things to cross the deser They are tall animals with thin legs. Their milk is delicious and we can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are good animals for the desert because they don't drink a lot of water. Their feet are flat so they can walk on sand in the desert. They can close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Camels are .... , so they can carry people and things
   a) weak b) slow c) bad d) strong
2. Camels close their noses and eyes to stop the .... from coming in.
   a) food b) water c) sand d) milk

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why can camels walk in the desert? ....
4. How is the camel's milk? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I think the cheetah is the .... (fast) animal
2. An elephant is .... (big) than a mouse
3. I think beans are .... (delicious) than potatoes
4. I play sports .... (but) exercise

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي

- papyrus is a very special plant

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The fennec fox

Guiding words:

(desert - big ears - fur - warm)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Where do you live?

أين تعيش؟

In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف......

- listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town.
  يستمع و يقرأ و يبحث ويكتب عن مختلف المنازل والأماكن في المدينة.
- practice making sentences with prepositions.
  يتدرب على تكوين الجمل باستخدام حروف الجر.
- read and listen to a short story.
  يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- learn about and say words with /f/ and /v/.
  يتعلم ويقول كلمات بالأصوات (/f/ و /v/).
- write a short article about his village or city.
  يكتب مقال قصير عن قريته أو مدينته.
- research and make a poster.
  يبحث ويقوم بعمل ملصق.

Lesson (1) AT HOME

Vocabulary

Types of houses أنواع المنازل


apartment
شقة


houseboat
منزل عائم

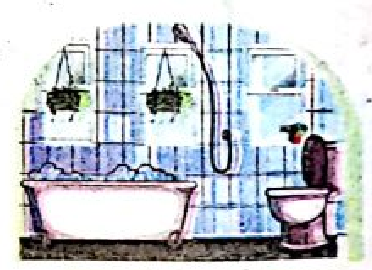

tent
خيمة


house
منزل

At home في المنزل


kitchen
مطبخ


bedroom
حجرة نوم


bathroom
حمّام


balcony
شرفة (بلكونه)


dining room
حجرة الطعام


living room
حجرة المعيشة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

desert	صحراء	because	لأن	people	ناس
street	شارع	fantastic	رائع	outside	في الخارج
lovely	جميل - محبوب	favorite	مفضل	quietly	بهدوء
unusual	غير عادى	whole	كل	cloth	قماش

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — ***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	sit	يجلس	sat
organize	ينظم	organized	see	يرى	saw
produce	ينتج	produced	make	يصنع	made
help	يُساعد	helped	can	يستطيع	could
look	ينظر	looked	do	يفعل	did

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

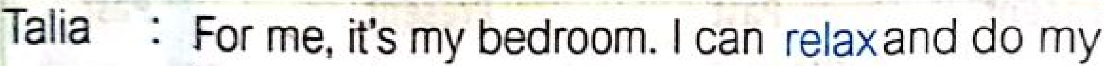
see the whole street	يرى الشارع بأكمله
(be) made of cloth	مصنوع من القماش
for me	بالنسبة لي
do homework	يؤدي الواجب المنزلي
move to	ينتقل إلى
Let's do it!	هيا بنا نفعل ذلك!
That sounds good!	هذا يبدو جيدًا!
live on water	يعيش على المياه
live in	يعيش في
live with	يعيش مع

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Mom	:	Look at our lovely new apartment! انظري إلى شقتنا الجديدة الجميلة!
Talia	:	It's fantastic! إنها رائعة!
Mom	:	Which is your favorite room? أي غرفة مفضلة لديك؟
Talia	:	For me, it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly بالنسبة لي، غرفة نومي، يمكنني الاسترخاء وأداء واجبي المنزلي بهدوء.
Mom	:	My favorite is the living room with the balcony I can see the whole street! Talia, can you help me organize the kitchen? الغرفة المفضلة لدي هي غرفة المعيشة والموجود بها شرفة. يمكنني رؤية الشارع بأكمله! هل يمكنك مساعدتي في تنظيم المطبخ يا تاليا!
Talia	:	That sounds good, let's do it! هذا يبدو جيدًا، هيا بنا نفعل ذلك!



Answer the following questions.

1) What is Talia's favorite room?

....

2) What's Mom's favorite room?

....

3) How is their new apartment?

....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (1)

Look and read.

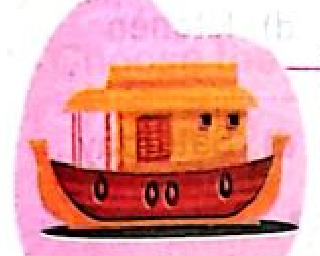
انظر واقرأ.

Different houses



My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony.

انتقلت عمتي إلى شقة جديدة مع عائلتها. إنهم سعداء للغاية لأن لديهم شرفة كبيرة.



My friend and her family live on a houseboat. It's small, but she loves living on water.

تعيش صديقتي وعائلتها في منزل عائم. إنه صغير، لكنها تحب العيش على الماء.



In the desert, some people live in a tent. This home is made of cloth.

في الصحراء، يعيش بعض الناس في خيمة. هذا المنزل مصنوع من القماش.



I love living in a house because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

أحب العيش في منزل لأنه مبنى كبير. يعيش أجدادي معنا. يمكنني اللعب في الخارج مع أخي وأختي.

Answer the following questions.

1) Why are your aunt and her family happy?

....

2) Where do some people live in the desert?

....



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Hamza lives in a/an ....
   a) tent b) apartment c) house d) houseboat
2. He plays games with his ....
   a) brother b) sister c) father d) mother
3. He helps his mother in the ....
   a) bedroom b) balcony c) living room d) kitchen
4. He plays football on ....
   a) Sunday b) Monday c) Friday d) Saturday

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

living room - fantastic - bedroom - relax

We moved to a new apartment. It's 1) ....
My favorite room is my 2) .... I ca
3) ....and do my homework quietly. My mom's favorit
room is the 4) ....with the balcon

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My mom cooks in the ....
   a) living room b) dining room c) kitchen d) bathroom
2. I wash my face in the ....
   a) dining room b) bathroom c) bedroom d) balcony
3. We sleep in the ....
   a) bedroom b) dining room c) kitchen d) bathroom
4. In the desert, some people live in a/an .... made of cloth
   a) house b) apartment c) houseboat d) tent

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. I watch TV with my family in the ....

   a) **living room** b) **balcony** c) **dining room** d) **bathroom**

6. She loves living on water. She lives on a/an ....

   a) **houseboat** b) **house** c) **apartment** d) **tent**

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I love living in a house because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister. My friend and her family live on a houseboat. It's small, but she loves living on water.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. I can play .... with my brother and sister.

   a) **outside** b) **on** c) **over** d) **inside**

2. My friend loves living on ....

   a) **tent** b) **water** c) **farm** d) **work**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why do you love living in a house? ....
4. Where does your friend live? ....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- which is your favorite room

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My new apartment

Guiding words:

(live - apartment - bedroom - living room - balcony)

....

....

....

Lesson (2) WHERE IS IT?

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية



school
مدرسة



museum
متحف



hospital
مستشفى



office
مكتب



shopping mall
مجمع تجاري (مول تجاري)



post office
مكتب بريد



supermarket
سوبر ماركت

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

village	قرية	the Nile	ر النيل
clothes	ملابس	sick	يض
couch	أريكة - كنبة	work	ل
park	حديقة	learn	لم

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

next to the Nile	بجوار نهر النيل	buy food	ري طعاما
send letters	يرسل خطابات	live in	ش في

Help your child identify these words.
طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Definitions تعريفات

supermarket	a place where we buy food	سوبر ماركت
post office	a place where we send letters	مكتب بريد
school	a place where we learn	مدرسة
shopping mall	a place where we buy clothes and shoes	مول تجاري
office	a place where my mom and dad work	مكتب
hospital	a place where we go when we are sick	مستشفى

Look and read. انظر واقرأ



My name's Zein. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

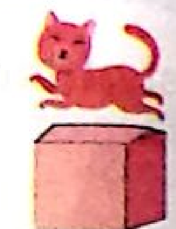
اسمي زين. أعيش في قرية بجانب النيل. أعيش في منزل مع عائلتي. منزلنا ليس الأكبر في القرية. إنه بين منزل لونه أصفر وآخر لونه بني. توجد أشجار طويلة خلف المنزل.



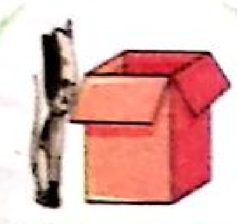
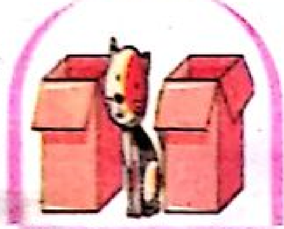
Language Focus

Prepositions of place حروف جر المكان



on	in	under	above
على	في	تحت	فوق



next to	between	behind	in front of
بجوار	بين	خلف	أمام



We use prepositions of place to say where something

نستخدم حروف جر المكان للتعبير عن مكان الشيء.

Asking and answering about places:

السؤال والإجابة عن الأماكن:

Where + is + place (المكان) ?

- Where is the museum?

The place (المكان) + is + preposition of place (حرف الجر للمكان) + another place (مكان آخر)

- The museum is next to the park.
- Where is the kitchen?
- The kitchen is next to the living room.
- Where is the couch?
- The couch is in the living room.
- Where is your house?
- My house is between the tall house and the tree.

Help your child use prepositions of place.

ساعد طفلك على استخدام حروف جر المكان

Lesson (2)

Look and complete the sentences. انظر وأكمل الجمل.



The tent is .... the car.



There's a plant .... the armchair.



The pink house is .... the red house and the yellow house.



There are 4 chairs and a table .... the balcony.



The trees are .... the house.



There is a cat .... the table.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I live in a village next .... the Nile
   a) at b) of c) to d) by
2. There is a plant .... the sofa
   a) in b) next c) behind d) front
3. I sit .... Ali and Omar
   a) in b) on c) above d) between
4. A/An .... is a place where I learn
   a) hospital b) school c) zoo d) office
5. A .... is a place where we send letters
   a) park b) post office c) hospital d) school
6. The shopping mall is .... to the supermarket
   a) behind b) next c) in d) above
7. My house is .... the tall house and the tree
   a) between b) in front of c) behind d) on
8. There is a cat in .... of the tree
   a) between b) behind c) next d) front

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

between - behind - next - biggest

My name's Zein. I live in a village 1) .... to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. It's not the 2) .... in the village. It's 3) .... a yellow house and a red house. There are tall trees 4) .... the house.

Lesson (2)

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name's Zein. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "behind" is the opposite of "..................".
   a) in front of   b) in   c) on   d) under
2. Zein's house is .... a yellow house and a brown house.
   a) in   b) between   c) under   d) on

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who does Zein live with? ....
4. Where is Zein's house? ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. .... (When) is the school? - It's next to the park.
2. The hospital is .... (behind) to the school.
3. The shopping mall is in .... (next) of the post office.
4. The park is next .... (on) the supermarket.
5. The school is .... (on) the hospital and the school.
6. My school is .... (behind) to the hospital.
7. The teacher is in .... (next) of the students.

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- the hospital is next to the school

....

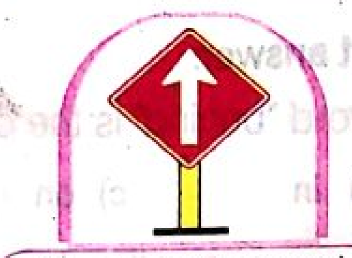
GIVING DIRECTIONS

Listen and repeat. ستمع وردد.

Giving Directions وصف الاتجاهات



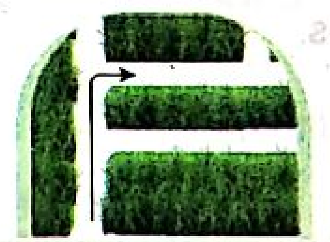

Turn right.
اتجه يمينًا.



Go straight ahead.
سر للأمام مباشرة.



Turn left.
اتجه يسارًا.



Take the second right.
خد المنعطف الثاني يمينًا.



It's on the corner.
إنه على الناصية (في الزاوية).

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Excuse me!	معذرة!	Thank you!	شكرًا لك!
I'm so happy!	أنا سعيد جدًا!	It's on the left	ه على اليسار
See you soon!	أراك قريبًا!	come to	أتي إلى
on the other side	على الجانب الآخر	Here are	نا يوجد
near my house	بالقرب من منزلي		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3 / A)

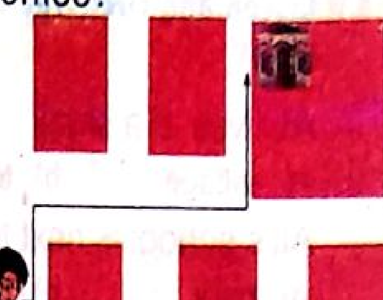
Listen, read and follow the directions.

استمع واقرأ واتبع الاتجاهات.

Omar : Excuse me, where's the post office?

Ali : Go straight ahead.
Turn right. Take the second
left. It's on the corner.

Omar : Thank you!



Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

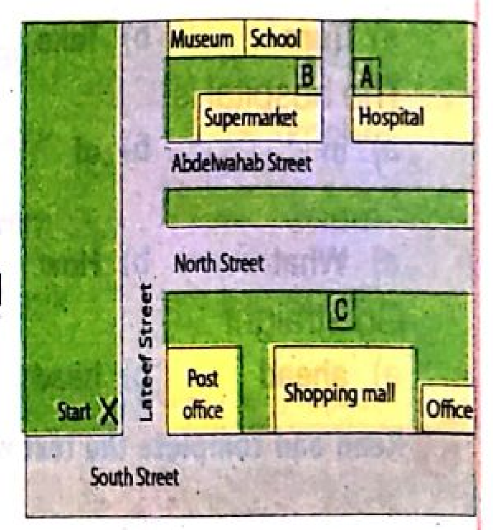
Dina is going to visit her friend Fareeda. Read and follow the directions. Help Dina find her friend's house.

Hi Dina!

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some directions. From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right to Abdelwahab Street.
Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is between the supermarket and the school.

See you soon.

Fareeda



مرحبًا دينا!

أنا سعيدة جدًا لأنك ستأتي إلى منزلي اليوم. إليك بعض الاتجاهات. من ناصية الشارع الجنوبي مع شارع لطيف انطلقي إلى الأمام مباشرة. خذي المنعطف الثاني يمينًا إلى شارع عبدالوهاب. اذهبي إلى الأمام مباشرة. انعطفي يسارًا عند السوبر ماركت. منزلي بين السوبر ماركت والمدرسة.

أراكِ قريبًا! فريدة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ali lives in a small ....
   a) village   b) town   c) city   d) tent
2. Ali's school is next to the ....
   a) park   b) hospital   c) zoo   d) post office
3. .... the hospital, there is a park
   a) Next to   b) Behind   c) In front of   d) On
4. Ali often plays football in the ....
   a) school   b) park   c) hospital   d) zoo

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... right. The zoo is on the left
   a) Turn   b) Take   c) Go   d) Run
2. The hospital is .... the corner
   a) in   b) of   c) on   d) above
3. .... is the school? - It's on the right
   a) What   b) How   c) When   d) Where
4. Go straight .... The park is on the corner
   a) ahead   b) head   c) right   d) heads

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

turn - second right - supermarket - corner - directions

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some 1) .... From the 2) ...... of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the 3) .. to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the 4) .... My house is between the supermarket and the school.

 Help your child deal with such questions.

LIVING ON A BOAT

Vocabulary

tourist boats	قوارب سياحية	fun	متعة	child	طفل
interesting	شيق	Chinese	اللغة الصينية	boring	ممل
summer	فصل الصيف	English	اللغة الإنجليزية	important	هام
suddenly	فجأة	parents	الوالدان	friend	صديق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
call	ينادي	called
smile	يبتسم	smiled
save	ينقذ	saved
decide	يقرر	decided
jump	يقفز	jumped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
fall	يسقط	fell
say	يقول	said
know	يعرف	knew
swim	يسبح	swam
speak	يتحدث	spoke

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

travel up and down	يسافر ذهابا وإيابا
fell into the river	سقط في النهر
from all over the world	من كل أنحاء العالم
work on tourist boats	يعمل على المراكب السياحية
speak with	يتحدث مع
Please help me!	ساعدني رجاء!

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Living on a boat



My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile.

صديقي شريف يعيش على متن قارب في الصيف . يعمل والديه على متن قوارب سياحية لذلك يذهب معهم. وهم يسافرون ذهابًا وإيابًا في نهر النيل.

He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

إنه يحب الصيف جدًا و يرى الكثير من الأماكن الممتعة ويلتقي بأشخاص من جميع أنحاء العالم و هو يتحدث الإنجليزية والصينية مع السياح.

One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river! The child shouted 'Please help me!'

وذات يوم توقف القارب. ورأى شريف بعض الأطفال يلعبون. وفجأة سقط طفل صغير في النهر! صرخ الطفل «من فضلكم ساعدوني!»

Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child! The child smiled and said, 'Thank you so much!' Sherif was very happy, but he also decided to learn to swim.

نادى شريف والده. رأى والد شريف الطفل وقفز في النهر و سبح وأنقذ الطفل. ابتسم الطفل وقال "شكرًا جزيلًا!" كان شريف سعيدًا جدًا، لكنه قرر أيضًا أن يتعلم السباحة.

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

Lesson (3 / B)

Pronunciation

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



v /v/





living room غرفة معيشة



vegetables خضروات



van شاحنة صغيرة

Tip!



Touch your neck with your finger. Say "fish". Your neck doesn't move.

المس رقبتك بإصبعك وقل كلمة "fish"، ستلاحظ أن رقبتك لا تتحرك.

Say "van". Your neck moves.

قُل "van": رقبتك تتحرك.

Help your child recognize and produce the sounds /f/ and /v/. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الصوتين /f/ و /v/ وينطقهما



Activities

1 **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My friend Hany lives on a ....
   a) boat b) farm c) tent d) houseboat
2. His .... work on tourist boats
   a) uncles b) parents c) aunts d) friends
3. They travel .... and down the Nile
   a) of b) in c) up d) on
4. He likes the .... very much
   a) winter b) fall c) spring d) summer

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We travel .... and down the Nile
   a) on b) at c) by d) up
2. I swam and .... the child
   a) saved b) played c) decided d) liked
3. The child .... "Please help me"
   a) played b) shouted c) ran d) smiled
4. I .... to learn to swim
   a) travelled b) walked c) decided d) saw
5. He .... English and Chinese with the tourists
   a) works b) lives c) decides d) speaks

3 **Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

world - English - interesting - down

Hamdy likes the summer very much. He travels up and
1) .... the Nile. He sees many
2) .... places. He meets people from all over the
3) .... He speaks
4) .... with the tourists.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3 / B)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Sherif works on tourist boats. One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly, a small child fell into the river. The child shouted, "Please help me!". Sherif swam and saved the child.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The children were ....

   a) eating b) playing c) drinking d) sleeping

2. A small child .... into the river.

   a) flew b) fell c) filled d) felt

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Sherif see? ....

4. Where does Sherif work? ....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- he speaks English and Chinese

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Living on a boat

Guiding words:

(boat - summer - tourist)

....

....

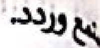
....

....

....

Lessons (4 / 5) WRITING PROJECT

Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. 




Sahl Hasheesh
سهل حشيش



beach
شاطئ



bazaar
بازار



the Sahara Dese
الصحراء الكبرى

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة	fact	حقيقة	near	يب
worker	عامل / عاملة	check	يفحص	photo	ورة
bold	خط عريض	drawings	رسومات	island	زيرة
diagram	مخطط	map	خريطة	city	دينة
tourist	سائح	east	شرق	about	ن
south	جنوب	safaris	رحلات سفاري	fresh	ازج

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

There are lots of interesting things to do.
اك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة لتقوم بها.

in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea — شرق مصر على ساحل البحر الأحمر

go on safaris — هب في رحلات سفاري

on the map — ى الخريطة

on the Red Sea — ى البحر الأحمر

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Look at the table and read Mariam's article about Hurghada.



Hurghada - My town



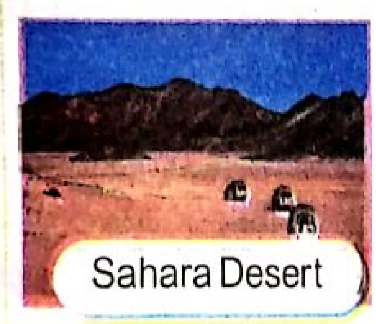
Hurghada on the map

City	Hurghada
Where is it?	east of Egypt
How many people live there?	about 190,000 people
Interesting things in Hurghada	beach, Sahara Desert, Sahl Hasheesh, bazaars, safaris

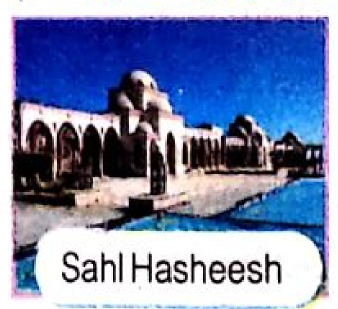
Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190.000 people live here.

In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

مرحبًا، أنا مريم. أعيش في مدينة تسمى الغردقة. تقع في شرق مصر على البحر الأحمر. إنها مدينة كبيرة ويعيش فيها حوالي ١٩٠ ألف شخص. يوجد شاطئ في الغردقة، وهناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكن القيام بها. توجد الصحراء الكبرى حيث يقوم الكثير من السياح برحلات سفاري. لدينا أيضا سهل حشيش في جنوب الغردقة. وبها بعض المنازل الجميلة والبازارات المثيرة للاهتمام.


Sahara Desert


Hurghada beach


Sahl Hasheesh

Help your child read about "Hurghada".
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مدينة الغردقة.



- Complete the table about your village, town or city.

Village / Town / City	
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in your village / town / city	

Write about your village, town or city.

ي عن قريتك أو مدينتك يمكنك استخدام (صورة - خريطة - رسومات - مخطط - حقائق شيقة)

My ....

Hi, I'm .... I live in a city / town / village called .... It is in .... About .... people live here.

....

....

There is a .... There are lots of .... We also have .... There are .... here. We don't have ...., but we have ....

....

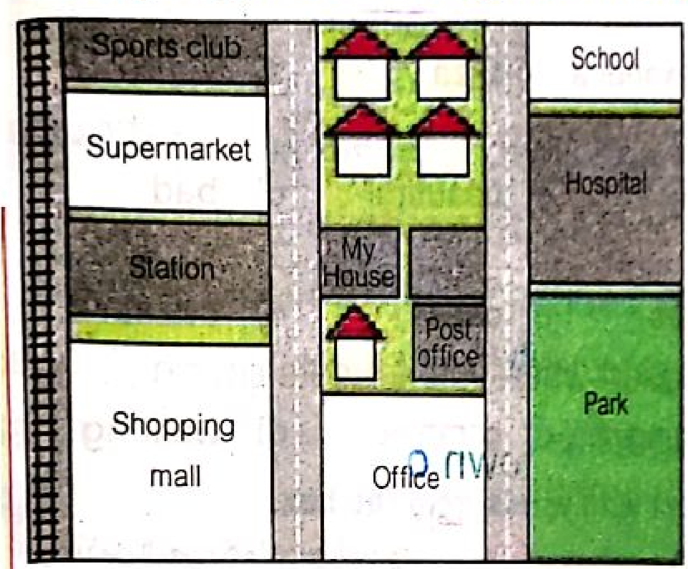
....

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



The people who help us: the supermarket worker





This is Mona. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

هذه منى. إنها تعمل في السوبر ماركت القريب من منزلي. أراها أنا وعائلتي كل أسبوع عندما نشتري الطعام. منى تتأكد من أن الطعام طازج و هي تساعدنا عندما لا يمكننا العثور على شيء ما. إنها لطيفة وسعيدة جدًا.

A) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

1) Mona works in a hospital. (   )

2) Mona is very kind and happy. (   )

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Where does Mona work?

....

4) How does she help you?

....



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Aya lives in ....
   a) Hurghada b) Alexandria c) Giza d) Cairo
2. It has some .... hou
   a) dirty b) ugly c) beautiful d) bad
3. It has interesting ....
   a) farms b) lakes c) oases d) bazaars
4. There is the Sahara Desert where lots tourists go on ......
   a) safaris b) fishing c) camping d) walking

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

people - beach - Egypt - big

Sara lives in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of
1) .... on the Red Sea. I
a 2) .... city and about 190,
3) .... live here. There
a 4) .... in Hurghad

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live in a .... called Hurghad
   a) city b) village c) country d) tent
2. A lot of .... visit Hurghad
   a) farmers b) teachers c) tourists d) doctors
3. You can ride .... in the dese
   a) camels b) dogs c) lions d) snakes
4. Hurghada is on the Red ....
   a) River b) Desert c) Lake d) Sea

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5)

5. We can buy papyrus from ....
   a) supermarket b) bazaars c) beaches d) hospitals
6. There is a beautiful .... in Hurghada.
   a) beach b) lake c) ocean d) river
7. Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt.
   a) north b) south c) east d) west

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Hurghada is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live there. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about ....
   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Hurghada d) Alexandria
2. Hurghada is a big ....
   a) farm b) city c) town d) village

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where is Hurghada?

....

4. How many people live there?

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My city

Guiding words:

(Alexandria - north - sea - beaches)

....

....

....



Review on Unit (4)



Buildings


house


apartment


tent


houseboat


school


hospital

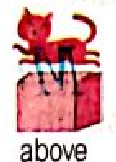

shopping mall


supermarket

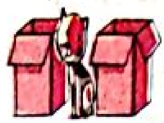

post office

Prepositions of place




above


behind

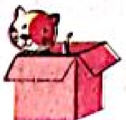

between


on


in front of


next to


under


in



Vocabulary

Vocabulary

Where do you live?

Phonics

Language



fish

foot

fan

face




living room


vegetables


van

- Where is the hospital?
- The hospital is next to the school.
- Go straight ahead. Turn right. It's on the corner.

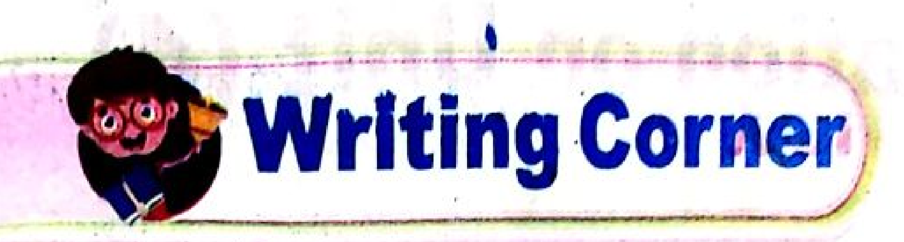
Directions


Turn left.

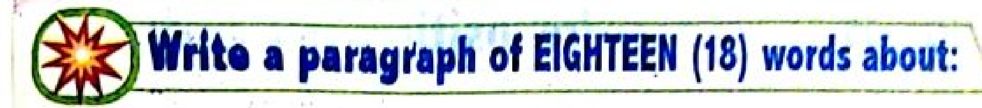


Go straight ahead.


Turn right.



Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:



My house

My family and I live in a big house. It has many rooms. My favorite room is the bedroom with a balcony, because I can enjoy the view of the street and the garden.

Kinds of homes

There are many kinds of homes such as houses, apartments, tents and houseboats. Many people live in houses or apartments. People in the desert live in tents. People who love water live on houseboats.

Hurghada

Hurghada is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190.000 people live there. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

Dictation

Lesso

بهدوء ....

شقة ....

مطبخ ....

الحمام ....

حجرة الطعام ....

مُفضل ....

Lesso

سوبر ماركت ....

مكتب بريد ....

مجمع تجاري ....

قرية ....

بجوار ....

أمام ....

فوق ....

بين ....

Lesso

قوارب سياحية ....

اللغة الصينية ....

اللغة الإنجليزية ....

فصل الصيف ....

شيق ....

Lessons

صورة ....

مدينة ....

خريطة ....

شاطئ ....

مخطط ....

Activities on Unit (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My sister works at a ....
   a) supermarket b) library c) hotel d) hospital
2. People buy .... at the supermarket.
   a) clothes b) food c) shoes d) books
3. She .... the food is fresh.
   a) sings b) plays c) sends d) checks
4. She is very .... and happy.
   a) ugly b) bad c) kind d) sad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Go straight .... and turn right.
   a) head b) right c) left d) ahead
2. The chair is in front .... the library..
   a) on b) to c) of d) at
3. We buy clothes and shoes at the ....
   a) shopping mall b) park c) zoo d) hospital
4. We go to the .... when we are sick.
   a) post office b) hospital c) supermarket d) park

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

right - next - station - between - in front of

In my town, the shopping mall is on the other side of the
1).., so the station is
2)..........the supermarket and the shopping mall. My dad's office is
3)..to the park. It's
4).. the post office.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile. He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Sherif lives on a boat in the ....
   a) summer b) spring c) winter d) fall
2. The word .... in the text means your father and mother.
   a) tourists b) summer c) interesting d) parents

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do Sherif's parents work? ....
4. What is Sherif's favorite season? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. .... (What) is the book? - It's under the table.
2. The chair is next .... (in) the sofa.
3. My house is .... (behind) the park and the library.
4. The couch is .... (above) the living room.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- does Tarek like crocodiles

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Places in my town

Guiding words:

(learn - buy food - hospital - send letters)

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

straight - office - right - corner

Amr : Excuse me, where is the post 1) .... ?
Sara : Go 2) .... ahead. Take the second
3) .... It's on the 4) ....
Amr : Thank you.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

food - sell - supermarket - near

Seif : Hi, where do you work?
Safia : Hi, I work in a 1) ....
Seif : Is it 2) .... your house?
Safia : Yes, it's near my house.
Seif : What do you 3) .... ?
Safia : We sell fresh 4) ....

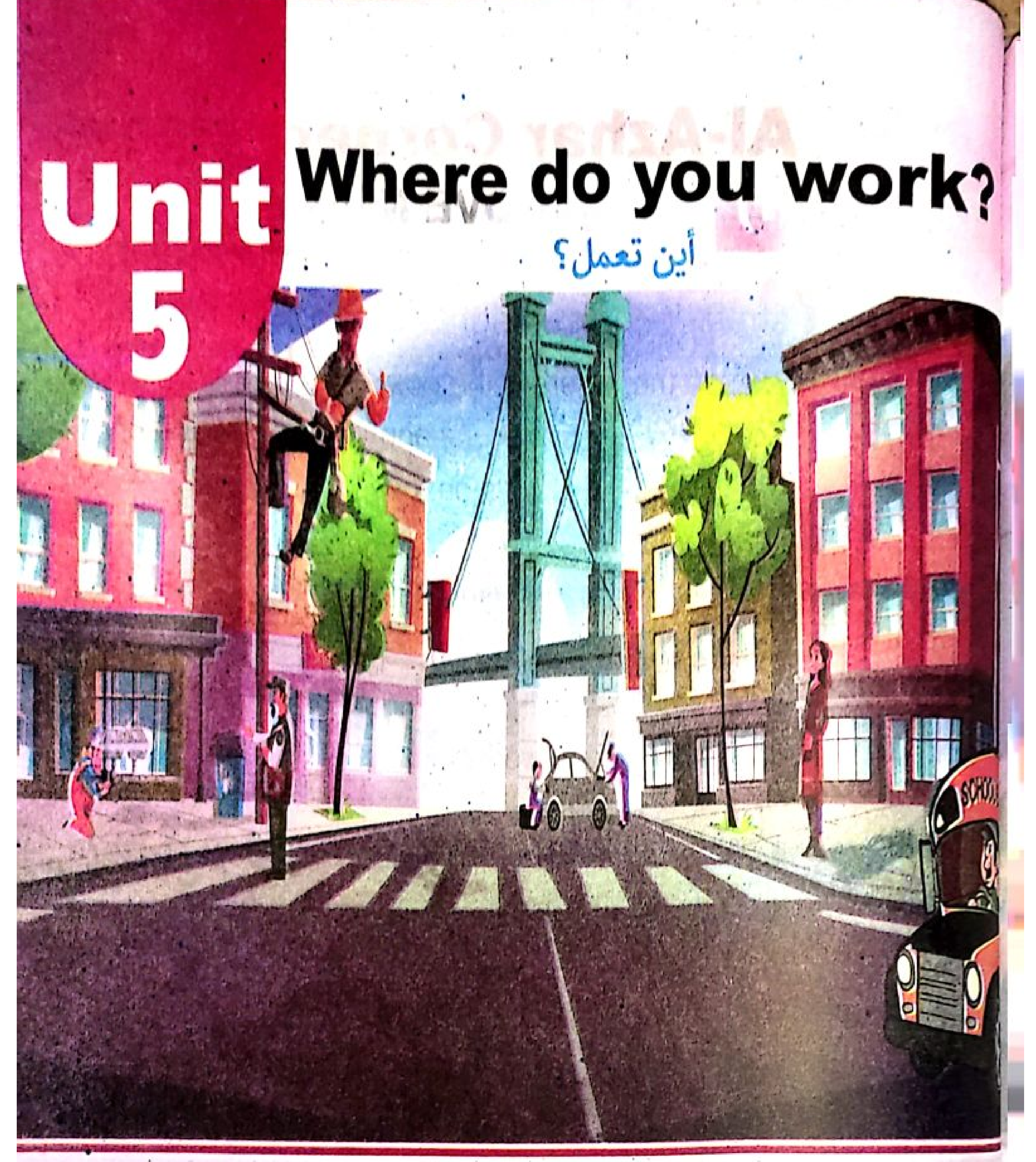
3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة

1. an - in - I - live - apartment - .
....
2. is - museum - Where - the - ?
....
3. under - table - There's - the - a cat - .
....
4. checks - the - Ali - food - fresh - is - .
....
5. in - a village - She - next to - lives - the Nile - .
....

Unit 5 Where do you work?

أين تعمل؟



In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف......

- listen, read, and write about workers in his /her community.
  يستمع و يقرأ ويكتب عن العمال في المجتمع.
- learn about electricity.
  يتعلم عن الكهرباء.
- practice using this, that, these, those
  يتدرب على استخدام (this , that , these , those).
- practice word stress.
  يتدرب على الكلمات المشددة.
- think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
  يفكر ويكتب عن إيجابيات وسلبيات الوظائف المختلفة..
- make a report about workers in his /her community.
  يقوم بعمل تقرير عن العاملين في المجتمع.

I LOVE MY JOB

Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردِّد

Jobs in my community

وظائف في مجتمعي



mail carrier
ساعي البريد



bus driver
سائق أتوبيس



mechanic
ميكانيكي



electrician
فني كهرباء



plumber
سباك



garbage collector
عامل نظافة / جامع القمامة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

pipes	مواسير (مياه)	being	كونه	difficult	صعب
wet	مبتل	faucet	صنبور مياه (حنفية)	problem	مشكلة
interesting	شيق	young	صغير السن	messy	فوضوي - غير مرتب
different	مختلف	driving	القيادة	parcel	طرد بريدي
garbage	قمامة	trash	قمامة	sockets	مقابس

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			Irregular verbs		
Present		Past	Present		Past
collect	يجمع	collect ed	take out	يخرج	took out
want	يريد	want ed	forget	ينسى	forgot
hope	يأمل	hope d	drive	يقود	drove
wait	ينتظر	wait ed	make	يصنع	made
talk	يتكلم	talk ed			
fix	يصلح	fix ed			
drip	ينقط	dripp ed			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

So what happened?	إذاً ماذا حدث؟	much better at	أفضل بكثير في
What about you?	ماذا عنك؟	put out	يضع بالخارج
Wait please....	انتظر من فضلك	lots of people	الكثير من الناس
work hard	يعمل بجد	around 20.000.000 tons	
have to	يجب أن		حوالي عشرين مليون طن

Did you know?

Cairo produces around 20,000,000tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.

تنتج القاهرة حوالي عشرين مليون طن من القمامة كل عام. جامعي القمامة يعملون بجد لجمع كل القمامة.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ

Zeinab : Dad, do you like your job?

أبي، هل تحب وظيفتك؟

Dad : Yes, I love being a plumber. Sometimes it's wet and messy because I have to fix pipes and faucets.

نعم، أنا أحب كوني سباك. في بعض الأحيان يكون المكان رطبا وفوضويا لأنني يجب أن أصلح الأنابيب والحنفيات.

Zeinab : Did you want to do a different job when you were young?

هل أردت أن تقوم بوظيفة مختلفة عندما كنت صغيرا؟

Dad : Yes, I wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic.

نعم، أردت أن أكون سائق حافلة أو ميكانيكي.

Zeinab : So what happened?

إذن ماذا حدث؟

Dad : Well, I don't really like driving! I was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!

حسنا ، أنا لا أحب القيادة حقا! كنت أفضل بكثير في إصلاح الأنابيب والحنفيات من السيارات!

Zeinab : What about you, Youssef? Do you like being an electrician?

ماذا عنك، يا يوسف؟ هل تحب أن تكون كهربائيا؟

Youssef : Yes, I love making things work!

نعم ، أنا أحب جعل الأشياء تعمل!

Dad : Oh look, here's the mail carrier! I hope he has my parcel...

أوه انظر!، ها هو ساعي البريد! آمل أن يكون لديه الطرد البريدي الخاص بي...

: And there's the garbage collector! Oh, I forgot to take out the trash! Wait please ...

وهناك جامع القمامة! أوه ، لقد نسيت أن أخرج القمامة! انتظر من فضلك ...

Ask and answer.





Which job is the most difficult? Why?

أي الوظائف أكثر صعوبة؟ لماذا؟

I think being a mail carrier is the most difficult as you have to work all day.

أعتقد كونك ساعي بريد هي الأكثر صعوبة لأنك يجب أن تعمل طوال اليوم.



Which job is the most interesting? Why?

أي الوظائف أكثر متعة؟ ولماذا؟

I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

تقد كونك سائق حافلة هي الأكثر متعة . فأنت تقود الحافلة
لأماكن مختلفة وتساعد الكثير من الناس.





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ola's father is a/an ....
   a) plumber b) mechanic c) bus driver d) electrician
2. He is good at .... pipes and faucets.
   a) driving b) fixing c) taking d) talking
3. Ola's brother is a/an ....
   a) mechanic b) bus driver c) plumber d) electrician
4. Ola's brother loves making things ....
   a) break b) damage c) stop d) work

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

mechanic - plumber - mail carrier - fixes - collects

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A 1) .... delivers your parcels. An electrician 2) .... sockets. A garbage collector 3) .... the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need a 4) .... to fix pipes and faucets.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A/An .... fixes faucets.
   a) mechanic b) plumber c) electrician d) bus driver
2. A bus driver .... to many places.
   a) swims b) collects c) drives d) fixes
3. A/An .... makes things work.
   a) electrician b) mail carrier c) mechanic d) plumber
4. The garbage collector collects ....
   a) parcels b) trash c) candy d) food

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Heba. I live in Cairo. My father is a plumber. When he was young he wanted to be a bus driver but he was better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars. My brother Ali is an electrician. He loves his job. He loves making things work.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Heba lives in ....
   a) **Giza** b) **Alexandria** c) **Cairo** d) **Aswan**
2. Heba's father is a/an ....
   a) **bus driver** b) **electrician** c) **mechanic** d) **plumber**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Heba's father want to be when he was young?

....

4. What is Ali's job?

....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- youssef is an electrician

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Jobs

Guiding words:

(plumber - faucets - electrician - work - bus driver)

....

....

....

....

....



IS IT NEAR OR FAR?

Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الإشارة

We use "Demonstrative pronouns" to say how close an object is to the speaker.

نستخدم "ضمائر الإشارة" لتوضيح مدى قرب الشيء من المتحدث.

For singular or uncountable nouns

للأسماء المفردة أو الأسماء التي لا تُعد

This	That
تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد / غير معدود قريب.	تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد / غير معدود بعيد.
This is + singular noun (اسم مفرد)	**That is + singular noun** (اسم مفرد)
	
This is the socket the electrician is fixing.	That is the water dripping from the faucet.
هذا هو المقبس الذي يقوم الكهربائي بتثبيته.	هذا هو الماء الذى يتقاطر من الصنبور.

Help your child use the demonstrative pronouns.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم ضمائر الإشارة.

For plural nouns

للأسماء الجمع

These	Those
تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.	تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.
These are + plural noun (اسم جمع)	**Those are + plural noun** (اسم جمع)





These are the plumber's tools.

هذه أدوات السباك.



Those drivers are driving the new buses.

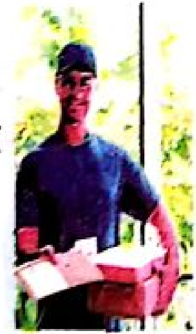
هؤلاء السائقين يقودون الحافلات الجديدة.

1 Fill in the spaces with:

املأ الفراغات بـ:

That - These - This - Those

1. Can you see? .... is the mail carrier. (far)



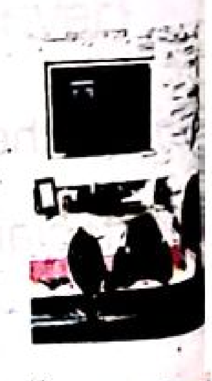
2. .... is my aunt. Her name is Amira. She's a teacher. (near)



3. .... children are going to school. (near)



4. .... children are watching TV. (far)



Help your child use the demonstrative pronouns.

Lesson (2 / A)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. .... mail carrier is riding a bicycle.
   a) That b) These c) They d) Those
2. .... mechanics work in the repair shop.
   a) Their b) Those c) This d) That
3. .... bus is taking me to school.
   a) These b) This c) Then d) Those
4. .... are the bus drivers.
   a) Their b) This c) That d) These
5. This .... my car.
   a) is b) have c) are d) were
6. That is my ....
   a) parents b) uncle c) cousins d) aunts

3 Change the sentences into plural as the example.

حول إلى الجمع كالمثال.

1. This is the faucet in my bathroom.
   These are the faucets in our bathrooms.
2. That is the mechanic who fixed my car.
   ....
3. This is the garbage collector who collects our trash.
   ....
4. That is the plumber who came to our house.
   ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I bought .... (these) car.
2. .... (That) are the plumber's tools.
3. The mail carrier delivered .... (these) parcel.
4. That .... (are) my pen.
5. This .... (plumbers) fixes the pipes.
6. This .... (are) my father.
7. .... (These) bus takes me to school.

Lesson [illegible]

ELECTRICITY

Electricity الكهرباء








plugs	burn	socket	electric shock	dangerous
فيشة / قابس	يحرق	مقبس كهربي	صدمة كهربية	خطير

wet	مبلل	dry	ـاف
flash	وميض	safely	طريقة آمنة
storm	عاصفة	lightning	ـرق
electrical	كهربائي	speed	ـرعة
electricity	كهرباء		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
study	يدرس	studied
practice	يتدرب	practiced
touch	يلمس	touched
control	يتحكم	controlled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
become	يصبح	became
put	يضع	put
know	يعرف	knew
burn	يحرق	burnt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

put (something) into	يضع شيئا ما في	work safely	ـل بأمان
control the body	يتحكم في الجسم	start a fire	ـعل حريقًا
get electric shock	يصاب بصدمة كهربية	make sure	ـد
close to	قريب من	know how to	ـرف كيف يقوم بـ

Lesson (2 / B)

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Amira the electrician



This is Amira, she's an electrician. She studied and practiced for three years before she became an electrician. She knows how to work safely with electricity.

هذه أميرة. وهي فني كهرباء. درست وتدربت على العمل لمدة ٣ أعوام قبل أن تصبح فني كهرباء. و هي تعرف كيفية التعامل مع الكهرباء بشكل آمن.

Interviewer : Tell us something interesting about electricity.

أخبرنا بشيء مثير للاهتمام عن الكهرباء.

Amira : Did you know, electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm.

هل تعلم أن الكهرباء تنتقل بسرعة كبيرة ، قريبة من سرعة الضوء. في العاصفة نرى أحيانا وميضا من البرق. هناك كمية كبيرة من الطاقة في العاصفة الكهربائية.

Interviewer : Is electricity dangerous? هل الكهرباء خطيرة؟

Amira : Yes, very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us.

نعم إنها خطيرة جدًا. إذا أصابتنا صدمة كهربية فلن نستطيع التحكم بأجسامنا و يمكن أيضا أن تحرقنا.

Interviewer : How can we use electricity safely?

كيف يمكننا استخدام الكهرباء بأمان؟

Amira : Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.



لا تلمس أبدًا أي شيء كهربي ويدك مبللة. يجب ألا تضع أي شيء في مقبس الكهرباء، استخدم القابس (الفيشة) فقط.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Amira is a/an ....
   a) electrician b) mechanic c) plumber d) bus driver
2. She studied for .... years
   a) four b) three c) five d) six.
3. She knows how to work .... with electricity
   a) badly b) quickly c) safely d) sadly
4. She says electricity is ....
   a) helpful b) useful c) safe d) dangerous

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

safely - wet - shock - control - burn

If we get an electric 1) ...., we can't 2) .... our bodies. It can also 3) .... us. To use electricity safely, never touch anything electrical with 4) .... hands.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Amira is an ....
   a) electrical b) electrician c) electricity d) electric
2. Amira knows how to work safely with ....
   a) electricity b) electrical c) electric d) electrician
3. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of ....
   a) light b) thunder c) lightning d) electricity
4. If we get an electric ...., we can't control our bodies
   a) book b) shock c) lock d) shake

Help your child deal with such questions.

5. Never touch anything electrical with .... hands.
   a) dry b) cut c) clean d) wet
6. Only use .... into a socket.
   a) storm b) plugs c) lightning d) pens

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Electricity is very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Electricity is ....
   a) dangerous b) safe c) useless d) unimportant
2. The underlined pronoun 'It' refers to ....
   a) sky b) electricity c) water d) ground

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What happens if we get an electric shock?

....

4. Why is electricity dangerous?

....

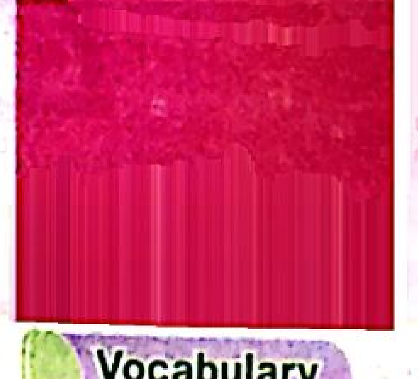
5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Electricity

Guiding words:

(dangerous - control - storm)

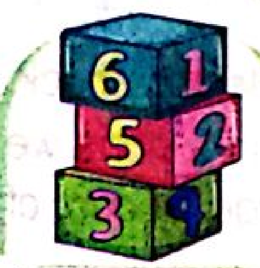
....
....
....



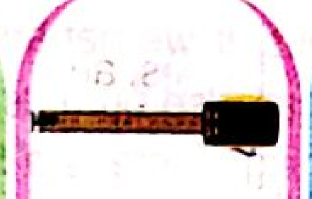
THREE COUSINS

Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد











blocks مكعبات	tape measure شريط القياس	screwdriver مفك البراغي	architect مهندس معماري

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

curious	محب للاطلاع / فضولي	still	ما زال	patient	صبور
adult	بالغ / راشد	safety	أمان	top	أعلى - قمة
experiment	يجرب - تجربة	radio	جهاز راديو	cell phone	هاتف محمول

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
explain	يشرح	explain ed	learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt
carry	يحمل	carr ied	put	يضع	put
work	يعمل	work ed	make	يصنع	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get angry at	يغضب من	all the time	طوال الوقت
call each other	يتصل بعضهم ببعض	English class	حصة لغة إنجليزية
helping people	مساعدة الناس	when I'm older	عندما أكبر

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Look, listen and read. انظر، واستمع واقرأ

Three cousins أولاد العم الثلاثة

Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins, but they are all very different.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was *How does it work?* She learned about safety with electricity.

Lara

لارا و تاليا وأمير أولاد عم، و لكنهم مختلفين جدًا. عندما كانت لارا طفلة، كانت تحب أن تجرب وكانت محبة للاطلاع. كانت دائمًا تحمل مفك البراغي وتفتح أجهزة الراديو القديمة و الهواتف المحمولة وأي شيء به كهرباء. و كان سؤالها المفضل كيف يعمل؟ و تعلمت كيف تتعامل بأمان مع الكهرباء.

When Talia was a baby, she played with blocks.
She put one block on top of another.
When she was older, she started making things.
She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil.

Talia

عندما كانت تاليا طفلة رضيعة، كانت تلعب بالمكعبات. كانت تضع مكعبًا فوق الآخر. و عندما كبرت في السّن بدأت في صنع الأشياء. لقد صنعت منزلًا صغيرًا لكلبها وسريرًا لدمية أختها. وكانت تحمل دائمًا شريط قياس وقلم رصاص.

Amir was always very patient and he liked helping people.
Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry.
He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.
Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all adults but they still call each other when they need some help.

Amir

كان أمير دائمًا صبورًا جدًا وأحبّ مساعدة الناس. في بعض الأحيان، يغضب الأخوة الكبار من إخوتهم الصغار و لكن أمير لم يغضب أبدًا، كان يلعب و يساعد و يشرح الأشياء طوال الوقت.
و اليوم، لارا و تاليا وأمير جميعهم بالغون و لكنهم لا يزالون يتصلون ببعضهم البعض عندما يحتاجون إلى بعض المساعدة.

Pronunciation

Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

A syllable is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.
المقطع الصوتي هو جزء من كلمة ويحتوي علي صوت متحرك واحد.

Two-syllable words كلمات ذات مقطعين

teach er

مُعلمة

plumb er

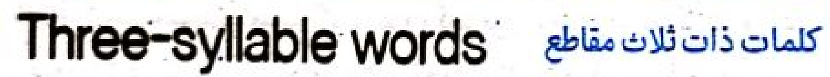
سباك

driv er
سائق

den tist

طبيب اسنان

doc tor
طبيب



Three-syllable words كلمات ذات ثلاث مقاطع

me chan ic

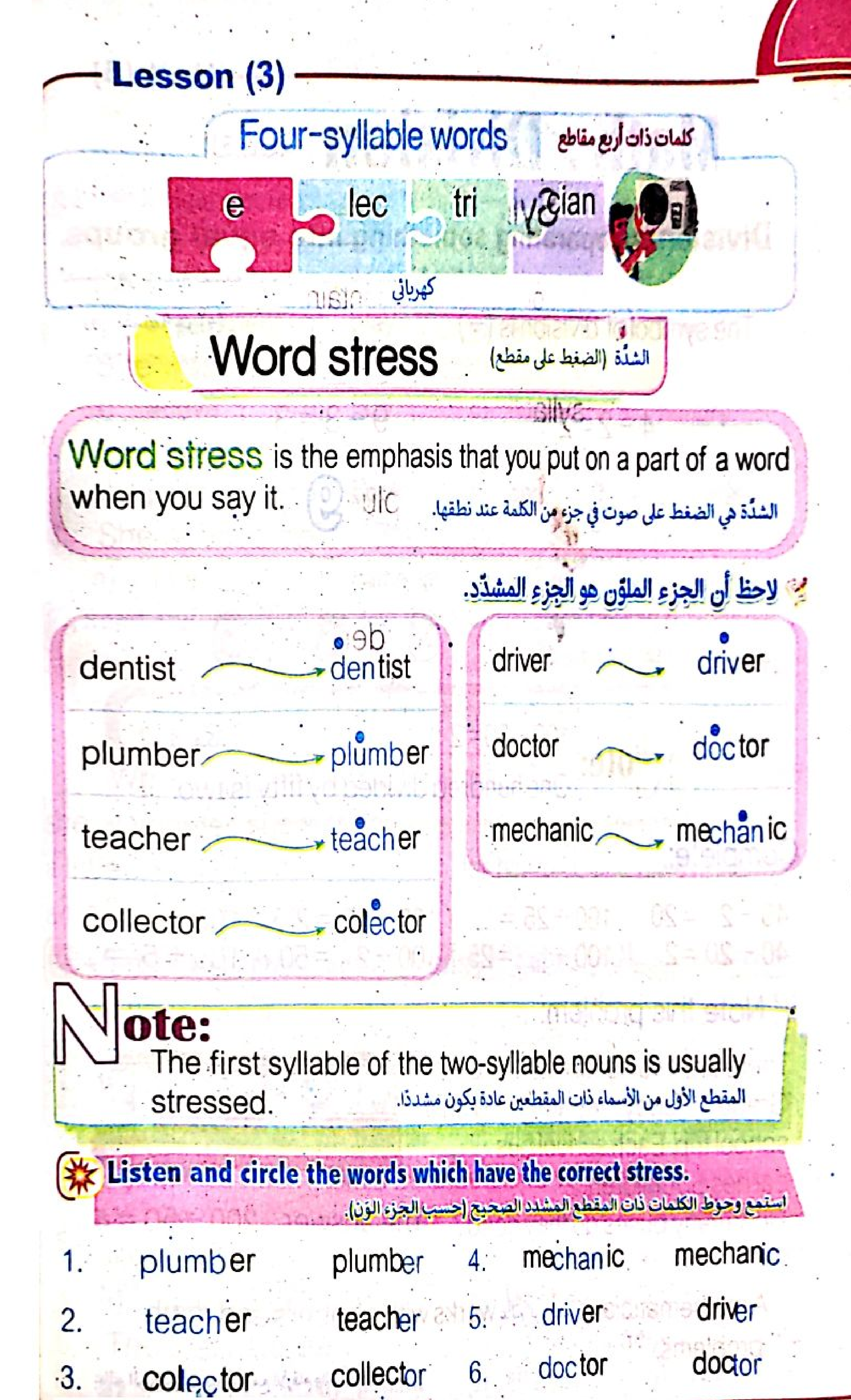
ميكانيكي

ar chi tect

مهندس معماري

col lec tor

جامع القمامة



Lesson (3)

Four-syllable words كلمات ذات أربع مقاطع

e lec tri cian

كهربائي

Word stress الشدَّة (الضغط على مقطع)

Word stress is the emphasis that you put on a part of a word when you say it. الشدَّة هي الضغط على صوت في جزء من الكلمة عند نطقها.

لاحظ أن الجزء الملوّن هو الجزء المشدّد.

dentist	den tist
plumber	plum ber
teacher	teach er
collector	col lec tor
driver	dri ver
doctor	doc tor
mechanic	me chan ic

Note:
The first syllable of the two-syllable nouns is usually stressed. المقطع الأول من الأسماء ذات المقطعين عادة يكون مشددا.

Listen and circle the words which have the correct stress.
استمع وحوط الكلمات ذات المقطع المشدد الصحيح (حسب الجزء الملون).

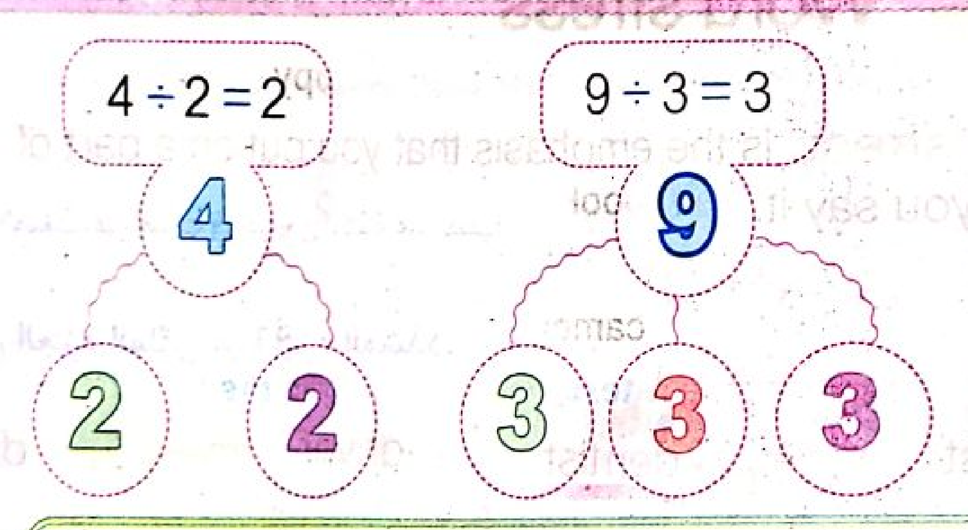
1. plumber — plumber
2. teacher — teacher
3. collector — collector
4. mechanic — mechanic
5. driver — driver
6. doctor — doctor

Math : Division القسمة

Division is separating something into equal groups.

القسمة هي عملية تقسيم شيء إلى مجموعات متساوية.

The symbol of division is (÷). رمز القسمة هو (÷)



Note: $100 \div 50 = 2$ تقرأ هكذا

One hundred divided by fifty is two.

Complete:

$40 \div 2 = 20$	$100 \div 25 =$	$100 \div 50 = 2$	$100 \div$ ..... $= 5$
$40 \div 20 = 2$	$100 \div$ .... $= 25$	$100 \div 2 = 50$	$100 \div 5 =$ ...

Note this problem:

There are two hundred children in Grade 4. Today they are going on a school trip. Each school bus carries 50 children.



How many buses do they need? The answer $200 \div 50 = 4$

A mathematician عالم الرياضيات works with numbers and math problems.

عالم الرياضيات يتعامل مع الأرقام والمسائل الحسابية.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Lara loved to ....
   a) experiment b) play c) sing d) swim
2. She wasn't.. .
   a) active b) lazy c) happy d) hungry
3. She always carried a.. .
   a) pen b) book c) bag d) screwdriver
4. She opened old.. and cell phones.
   a) TVs b) cameras c) radios d) computers

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

radios - house - tape measure - blocks - making

When Talia was a baby, she played with1) .... When she was older, she started2) .... things. She made a little3) .... for her dog. She always carried a4) .... and a pencil.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We call a/an.. when the fan doesn't work.
   a) doctor b) architect c) electrician d) teacher
2. A/An.. helps us design(يصمم) our houses.
   a) architect b) teacher c) electrician d) vet
3. A/An........................... helps us understand something in the class.
   a) vet b) architect c) teacher d) electrician
4. We use a.. to open radios.
   a) screwdriver b) pen c) tape measure d) block
5. The teachers are............................... . They like helping children.
   a) bad b) patient c) angry d) lazy

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She wa very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opene old radios, cell phones and anything that had electricity. He favorite question was "How does it work?" She learned abo safety with electricity. Lara wants to be an electrician when sh grows up.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Lara learned about .... with electricit
   a) work b) sports c) safety d) safely
2. Lara wants to be an .... when she grows up
   a) actress b) architect c) engineer d) electrician

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Lara love? ....
4. What did Lara always carry? ....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- i want to be an architect

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My cousin Omar

Guiding words:

(blocks - bed - house - tape measure - architect)

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons (4 & 5) WRITING PROJECT

Vocabulary — Listen and repeat. استمع وردِّد.

weather	طقس	report	تقرير
good points	نقاط جيدة	bad points	نقاط سيئة
bring	يحضر - يجلب	mail bag	حقيبة البريد
everybody	كل شخص (الجميع)	outside	بالخارج
exercise	تمرين	great	عظيم
easy	سهل	connect	يتصل / يقوم بتوصيل
pros (good things)	إيجابيات (مزايا)	garbage	قمامة
cons (bad things)	سلبيات (عيوب)	cleaners	عمال نظافة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

On the one hand	من ناحية
On the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
get a lot of exercise	يتدرب كثيرًا
get a mail	يتلقى (رسالة بريد)
start work	يبدأ عمل
wake upearly	يستيقظ مبكرًا
speak to	يتحدث إلى
so that	لكى
think about	يفكر في
all day	طوال اليوم
keep it clean	يحافظ عليه نظيف

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

A mail carrier's job



My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're talking about the good and bad things about different jobs. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the pros and cons.

اسمي شريفة. في الفصل هذا الأسبوع نتحدث عن الأشياء الجيدة و السيئة لوظائف مختلفة. تعمل عمتي ساعي بريد في أمريكا. لقد تحدثت إليها بخصوص وظيفتها وأخبرتني ببعض الإيجابيات والسلبيات.

Pros and cons of being a mail carrier.

What's it like to be a mail carrier?

There are some good and bad points about the job.

On the one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.

إيجابيات وسلبيات كونك ساعي بريد.

كيف يبدو الأمر عندما تكون ساعي بريد؟

هناك بعض النقاط الإيجابية والسلبية لهذه الوظيفة. من ناحية، يتواجد سعاة البريد بالخارج طوال اليوم، هذا رائع إذا كان الطقس جيدًا ولكنه ليس ممتعًا عندما يكون الطقس حار جدًا أو بارد جدًا، يسير سعاة البريد طوال اليوم، مما يجعلهم يحصلون على الكثير من التمارين. يرغب الجميع في تلقي البريد لذلك يحب الجميع لقاء ساعي البريد.

On the other hand, there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy. Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

على الجانب الآخر، يوجد بعض السلبيات التي يجب أخذها في الاعتبار. ليس من السهل العمل كساعي بريد؛ حقيبة البريد ثقيلة جدًا. وشيء سيء آخر أنهم يستيقظون مبكرًا جدًا. تبدأ عمتي العمل الساعة ٦ صباحًا.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Pros (good things)  إيجابيات	Cons (bad things)  سلبيات
- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.	- It's not easy.
- They speak to a lot of people.	- They wake up very early.
- Everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.	- They are outside all day.
- It's a great job when the weather is good.	- The mail bag is very heavy.

Project

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Workers who made our school



The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water.



The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights (أضواء).



The cleaners keep the school clean.



The bus drivers bring the children to school.



The garbage collectors take away our garbage.



The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There are some good and bad ..... about being a mail carrier
   a) points b) jobs c) dots d) sums
2. On the one hand, mail carriers are .... all day
   a) indoor b) inside c) outside d) off
3. This is great when the weather is ....
   a) cold b) hot c) bad d) good
4. Mail carriers .... all day and get a lot of exercise
   a) play b) walk c) run d) sleep

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

mail bag - exercise - outside - tired

Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mail carriers are 1) .... all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. They walk all the day and get a lot of 2) .... Also the 3) .... is very heavy. They are very 4) .... when they come back home.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The .... bag is always heavy.
   a) meal b) mail c) mull d) male
2. Mail carriers wake up very ....
   a) late b) happy c) early d) light
3. The .... connects electricity so that we can use lights.
   a) electrician b) builder c) mechanic d) vet
4. The .... keep the school clean.
   a) drivers b) builders c) cleaners d) mechanics
5. .... bring the children to school.
   a) Planes b) Canoes c) Scooters d) Buses

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are many workers who work at school. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights. The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage. The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The mechanics .... the cars and buses.
   a) play   b) keep   c) collect   d) fix
2. The .... take away our garbage.
   a) garbage collectors   b) mechanics   c) cleaners   d) doctors

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do the electricians do? ....
4. What do the cleaners do? ....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

what's it like to be a mail carrier

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Pros and cons of being a teacher

Guiding words:

(Dad - works - class - teaches - patient)

....

....

....

....

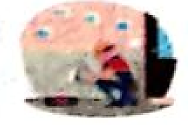
....



Review on Unit (5)

Jobs


bus driver


electrician


mail carrier


mechanic

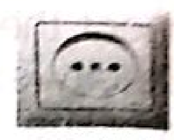

plumber


garbage collector



lightning


plug


socket



screwdriver


tape measure



blocks

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

Where do you work?

Phonics

Language

Syllables

Two Syllables

plumb.er

Three Syllables

me.chan.ic
ar.chi.tect
col.lec.tor

Four Syllables

e.lec.tri.cian

Stress

dentist
driver



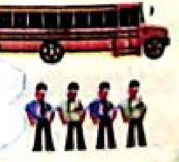
This is the socket the electrician is fixing.



These are the plumber's tools.



That's the mail carrier's bag.



Those are the bus drivers.

Help your child revise unit (5).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.





Electricity

Electricity is very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us. We can use electricity safely. We mustn't touch anything electrical with wet hands. We mustn't put anything into a socket, only use plugs.

Pros and cons of being a garbage collector

The garbage collector is a difficult job. On the one hand, he cleans our streets. On the other hand, he gets wet when it rains. He is happy because he helps to clean the city.

Workers who made our school

The plumbers connect the pipes. The electricians connect electricity. The mechanics fix the cars and buses. The cleaners keep the school clean. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

Dictation on Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

يصلح	....	سائق أتوبيس	....
فني كهربائي	....	عامل نظافة	....
ساعي البريد	....	ميكانيكي	....
سباك	....	يوصل / يسلم	....
مواسير	....	صنبور مياه	....
صعب	....	ينقط	....

Lesson (2)

مقبس كهربي	....	وميض	....
فيشة / قابس	....	عاصفة	....
يحرق	....	مبلل	....
خطير	....	جاف	....
صدمة كهربية	....	البرق	....
سرعة	....	طريقة آمنة	....
كهرباء	....	كهربائي	....

Lesson (3)

مهندس معماري	....	مكعبات	....
مفك البراغي	....	صبور	....
شريط القياس	....	هاتف محمول	....
آلة	....	جهاز الراديو	....
محب للاطلاع	....	يشرح	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

تقرير	....	طقس	....
...وب	....	مميزات	....
...نبة البريد	....	يحضر / يجلب	....
الخارج	....	قمامة	....
يحفظ	....	سهل	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.



Activities on Unit (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The.................................. connect the pipes so that we have water.
   a) plumbers b) teachers c) vets d) mechanics
2. The electricians.. the electricity.
   a) work b) connect c) play d) take
3. The cleaners keep the school.. .
   a) bad b) dirty c) clean d) ugly
4. The bus drivers.. the children to school.
   a) connect b) cut c) bring d) get

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. A/An.. fixes cars and buses.
   a) mechanic b) plumber c) electrician d) builder
2. A mail carrier.. your letters.
   a) connects b) fixes c) wakes d) delivers
3. Ali always carries a screwdriver, he is a/an.................................. .
   a) electrician b) dentist c) teacher d) vet
4. Don't touch the hot spoon. It can.. you.
   a) burn b) help c) give d) take

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

dry - dangerous - shock - fire - wet

Never touch anything electrical with 1)................... hands. The electricity is very 2).......................... . You can get an electric 3).. or start a 4).. .

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

There are some good and bad points to be a mail carrier. On the one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. On the other hand, there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy. Another bad thing is that they wake up early. They start work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Mail carriers are .... all day.
   a) **indoors** b) **outside** c) **inside** d) **indoor**
2. The mail bag is very ....
   a) **beautiful** b) **light** c) **small** d) **heavy**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
4. When do mail carriers start work? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. These .... (mechanic) work in the repair shop.
2. .... (These) bus driver is taking me to school.
3. That .... (are) the water dripping from the faucet.
4. .... (That) children are watching TV.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي

- do you like being an electrician

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A bus driver

Guiding words:

(bus driver - gets up - works - brings)

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

places - want - Why - bus driver

Ahmed : Which job is the most interesting?
Hani : I think being a 1) ....
Ahmed : 2) .... do you think so?
Hani : Because he drives to many different 3) ....
Ahmed : What do you want to be when you're older?
Hani : I 4) .... to be a teacher.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

delivers - do - difficult - mail carrier

Adam : What is your favorite job?
Malak : My favorite job is a 1) ....
Adam : What does a mail carrier 2) ....?
Malak : He 3) .... the letters.
Adam : Is it 4) ....?
Malak : Yes, sometimes.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة

1. the - screwdriver - That's - electrician's - .

....

2. collector - away - takes - garbage - The garbage - the - .

....

3. fast - electricity - How - can - travel - ?

....

4. wants - to - Ali - be - an electrician - .

....

Unit 6 What do you do?

ماذا تعمل؟



In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف.......

- read and learn about more jobs.
  يقرأ ويتعلم عن المزيد من الوظائف.
- explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.
  سيكتشف ما هي الصناعة و أسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.
- know about prime numbers.
  يتعرف على الأعداد الأولية.
- distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.
  يميز وينطق الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة.
- learn about words with the prefix dis-.
  يتعلم الكلمات التي تبدأ بالمقطع (dis).
- write about a job he/she wants to do.
  يكتب عن الوظيفة التي ...

Lesson (1) WHAT DO YOU DO?

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

farmer	مزارع / فلاح	farming	
librarian	أمين مكتبة	education	تعليم
guide	مرشد سياحي	tourism industry	صناعة السياحة
fisherman	صياد سمك	fishing	صيد السمك

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

factory	مصنع	transportation	وسائل النقل
teacher	مُعلم	tourist	سائح
library	مكتبة	restaurant	مطعم
history	التاريخ	market	سوق
information	معلومات	country	دولة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة | ***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
pick	يقطف	picked	catch	يصطاد	caught
need	يحتاج	needed	tell	يخبر	told
explain	يشرح	explained	sell	يبيع	sold
work	يعمل	worked	grow	يزرع	grew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

come back	يعود	catch fish	يصطاد الأسماك
look after	يعتني بـ	go out on my boat	أخرج بقاربي
all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	a lot of	الكثير من
wake up	يستيقظ	pick the fruit	يقطف الفاكهة

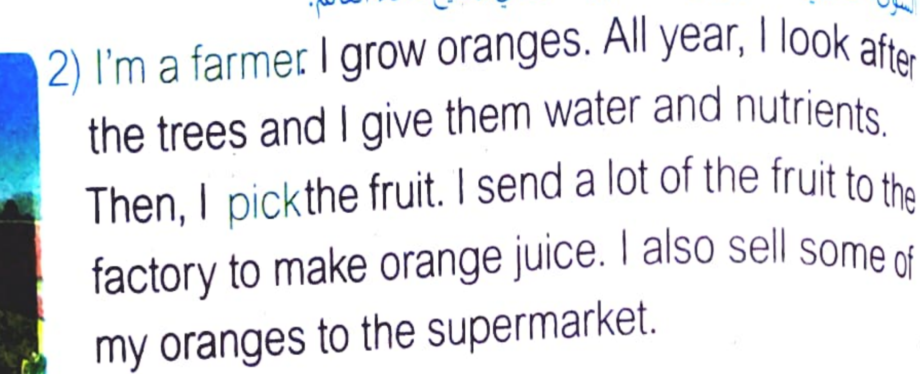
Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



1) I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day, I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

أنا صائد سمك. أستيقظ مبكرًا جدًا كل يوم، أخرج بقاربي وأصطاد الأسماك. ثم بعد الظهر، أعود وأبيع الأسماك في السوق. أسماكي تذهب إلى المطاعم والمنازل في جميع أنحاء العالم.



2) I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. All year, I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.

أنا مزارع، أنا أزرع البرتقال. طوال العام، أعتني بالأشجار وأعطيها الماء والغذاء. ثم أقطف الفاكهة. أرسل الكثير من الفاكهة إلى المصنع لصنع عصير البرتقال و أبيع أيضًا بعضًا من البرتقال الخاص بي إلى السوبر ماركت.



3) I'm a guide. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

أنا مرشدة. أعمل في صناعة السياحة. يأتي الناس إلى بلدي، و وظيفتي أن أشرح التاريخ و أخبر السياح بالعديد من المعلومات الشيقة عن الأماكن التي يزورونها.



4) I'm a librarian. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

أنا أمين مكتبة. أنا أعمل في مكتبة المدرسة. ووظيفتي أن اعتني بكل الكتب. اشترى الكثير من الكتب الجديدة وأساعد الأطفال في إيجاد المعلومات التي يحتاجونها.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

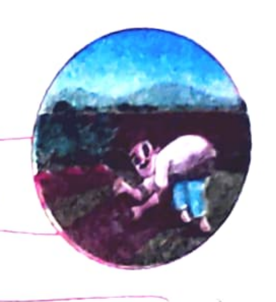
استمع واقرأ.



What do they do?



A fisherman catches fish.



A farmer looks after trees and picks the fruit.



The guide works in the tourism industry.



The librarian looks after books.

Tip

An **industry** is a business that produces a specific type of thing or gives a special kind of service.

الصناعة هي عمل ينتج عنه نوعًا معينًا من الأشياء أو تقدم نوعًا خاصًا من الخدمة.

Words connected to industry كلمات مرتبطة بالصناعة

farming



- animals
- trees

fishing



- boats
- nets

tourism



- hotels
- transportation

education



- teachers
- library



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I'm a ....
   a) teacher b) fisherman c) farmer d) tourist
2. I .... up very early every day.
   a) wake b) go c) sleep d) eat
3. I go out on my .... and catch fish.
   a) taxi b) car c) bike d) boat
4. I sell my fish in the ....
   a) shop b) supermarket c) market d) mall

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

tourist - books - library - information - new

Sara is a librarian. She works in a school 1) .... She looks after all the 2) .... books. She buys lots of 3) .... She helps children find the 4) .... they need.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I go out on my boat and .... fish.
   a) play b) catch c) pick d) read
2. The farmer .... the fruit.
   a) tricks b) looks c) picks d) fixes
3. A .... works in the tourism industry.
   a) farmer b) teacher c) doctor d) guide
4. Ali is a .... He grows fruits and vegetables.
   a) guide b) farmer c) librarian d) fisherman
5. I look after the books. I'm a ....
   a) tourist b) doctor c) farmer d) librarian

Lesson (1)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are many jobs that people do. A fisherman wakes up very early every day. He goes out on his boat and catches fish. Then in the afternoon, he comes back and sells his fish in the market. A farmer grows oranges. All year, he looks after the trees and he gives them water. Then, he picks the fruit. He sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to the ....
   a) farmer b) fisherman c) teacher d) tourist
2. The .... looks after the trees.
   a) librarian b) teacher c) farmer d) fisherman

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the farmer grow? ....
4. Why does the farmer send the fruit to the factory? ....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

i wake up very early every day

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A fisherman

Guiding words:

(wake up - boat - sell - market - restaurant)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (2) CLIL: SCIENCE

Vocabulary

mango tree	شجرة المانجو	children	أطفال	seed	بذرة
money	نقود	next to	بجوار/ بجانب	happy	سعيد
wood	خشب	beautiful	جميل	window	نافذة
decision	قرار	again	مرة أخرى	oil	بترول

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
play	يلعب	played	say	يقول	said
look	ينظر	looked	grow	ينمو	grew
plant	يزرع	planted	give	يعطي	gave
need	يحتاج	needed	cut	يقطع	cut

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look out of the window	ينظر من الشباك	no more wood	لا مزيد من الخشب
Don't worry.	لا تقلق.	under the tree	تحت الشجرة
cut down a tree	يقطع شجرة	grow bigger	ينمو ويصبح أكبر
grow into	ينمو ليصبح	run out	ينفد

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ

Two mango trees

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money. Let's cut down my tree. I can sell the wood.
She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.

Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes.

Malak looked out of the window. There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

"Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango seed, and it will grow into a big tree."





سارة وملك أختان. كل أخت لديها شجرة مانجو جميلة بجانب بيتها. كل عام، كان الأخوات يأكلن المانجو الجميل. وكان الأطفال يلعبون تحت الأشجار. قالت ملك ذات يوم، "لست بحاجة إلى مانجو. أنا أحتاج للمال. دعونا نقطع شجرتي. يمكنني بيع الخشب." قطعت ملك الشجرة وباعت الخشب. كانت ملك سعيدة. في العام التالي، نمت شجرة المانجو الخاصة بسارة بشكل أكبر وأكبر. وأعطت سارة المزيد من المانجو. نظرت ملك من النافذة. لم يكن هناك شجرة مانجو. لم يكن لديها مانجو ولا مزيد من الخشب. قالت سارة، "لا تقلقي" "ازرعي بذرة المانجو هذه وسوف تنمو لتصبح شجرة كبيرة."

- Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Sara and Malak are friends. ( )
2. Every sister had a beautiful mango tree. ( )

Help your child read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

Energy sources

مصادر الطاقة

Renewable Sources:

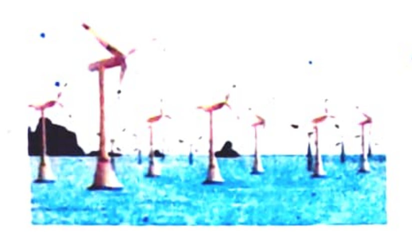
مصادر متجددة

can grow again or never run out.

يمكن أن تتجدد ثانية ولا تنفذ أبدًا.

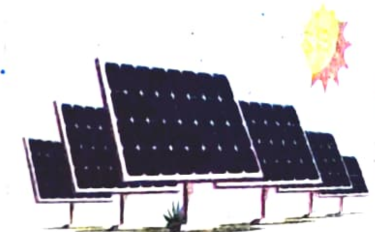
wind energy

طاقة الرياح



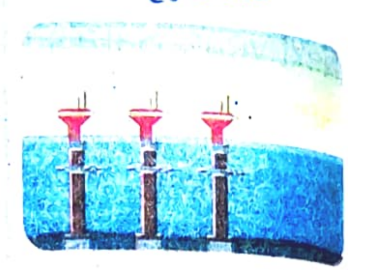
solar energy

الطاقة الشمسية



wave energy

طاقة الأمواج



Non-renewable Sources:

مصادر غير متجددة

can't grow and run out.

لا يمكن أن تتجدد وتنفذ.

oil البترول/ النفط



coal الفحم



gas الغاز





Help your child identify the renewable and non-renewable energy sources. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة وغير المتجددة.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Aya needed ....
   a) money   b) honey   c) gold   d) food
2. She .... her mango tree.
   a) looked after   b) cut down   c) got   d) watered
3. She sold the ....
   a) food   b) water   c) wood   d) juice
4. She was ....
   a) sad   b) lazy   c) happy   d) fast

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

money - honey - mangoes - wood - tree

Sara and Malak are two sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango 1) .... Every year, the sisters ate 2) .... One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need 3) .... to buy things. Let's cut down my tree. I can sell the 4) ...."

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... is a renewable energy.
   a) Oil   b) Gas   c) Solar energy   d) Coal
2. Malak cut .... her mango tree.
   a) on   b) at   c) down   d) in
3. Let's sell the mangoes. I need ....
   a) wool   b) soil   c) money   d) seeds
4. We can take .... from trees.
   a) milk   b) wood   c) fur   d) eggs

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Renewable energy is the energy that can grow again or never runs out. Wind, water and the sun are all sources of renewable energy. They don't cause pollution (تلوث). They are safe to use. But non-renewable sources like coal, oil and gas cause pollution. They are not safe.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The .... is a source of renewable energy.
   a) sun b) oil c) gas d) coal
2. Non-renewable energy causes ....
   a) water b) tourism c) industry d) pollution

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is renewable energy? ....
4. Give examples for non-renewable energy. ....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- how can we use renewable sources

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Energy sources

Guiding words:

(renewable - wind - solar - oil - coal - non-renewable)

....

....

....

....

Lesson (3) FRESH FISH VAN

Vocabulary

fisherman	صياد سمك	hot	حار
old	قديم / عجوز	surprised	مندهش
sound	صوت	engine	محرك
village	قرية	problem	مشكلة
lovely	محبوب / جميل	disappointed	محبط
fish van	شاحنة بيع الأسماك	fresh	طازج

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
fix	يصلح	fixed	drive	يقود	drove
change	يغير	changed	give	يعطي	gave
shout	يصيح	shouted	teach	يدرس / يعلم	taught
want	يريد	wanted	hear	يسمع	heard

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

around the village	حول القرية	want to help	يريد أن يساعد
lovely fresh fish	الأسماك الطازجة الجميلة	have fun	يستمتع
in front of	أمام	all about	كل شيء عن
come and get	تعال واحصل على	start his van	يشغل شاحنته

It's a very simple problem. إنها مشكلة بسيطة جدًا.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Fresh fish van

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish."

يوجد صياد عجوز في قريتي. يسير بشاحنته القديمة في القرية و يحب عمله ويستمتع ويصيح مناديًا، " السمك! سمك طازج! تعال واحصل على سمك طازج جميل."

One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help. Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van's engine. "It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom.

وفي يوم ما، كان أمام منزلي و لم يستطع تشغيل شاحنته. كان حزينا و محبطًا. رأت أمي الرجل و كان الجو حارًا في الشمس. أرادت المساعدة. كان والد أمي (جدي) ميكانيكيًا و علمها كل شيء عن السيارات. نظرت الأم إلى محرك الشاحنة القديمة وقالت: "إنها مشكلة بسيطة للغاية. أستطيع إصلاحها."

The old fisherman was surprised. Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed! "Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

كان الصياد العجوز مندهشًا. ثم سمعنا صوت المحرك. تم إصلاح الشاحنة! قال الصياد: "شكرًا لك". وأعطى أمي عشرة أسماك طازجة.

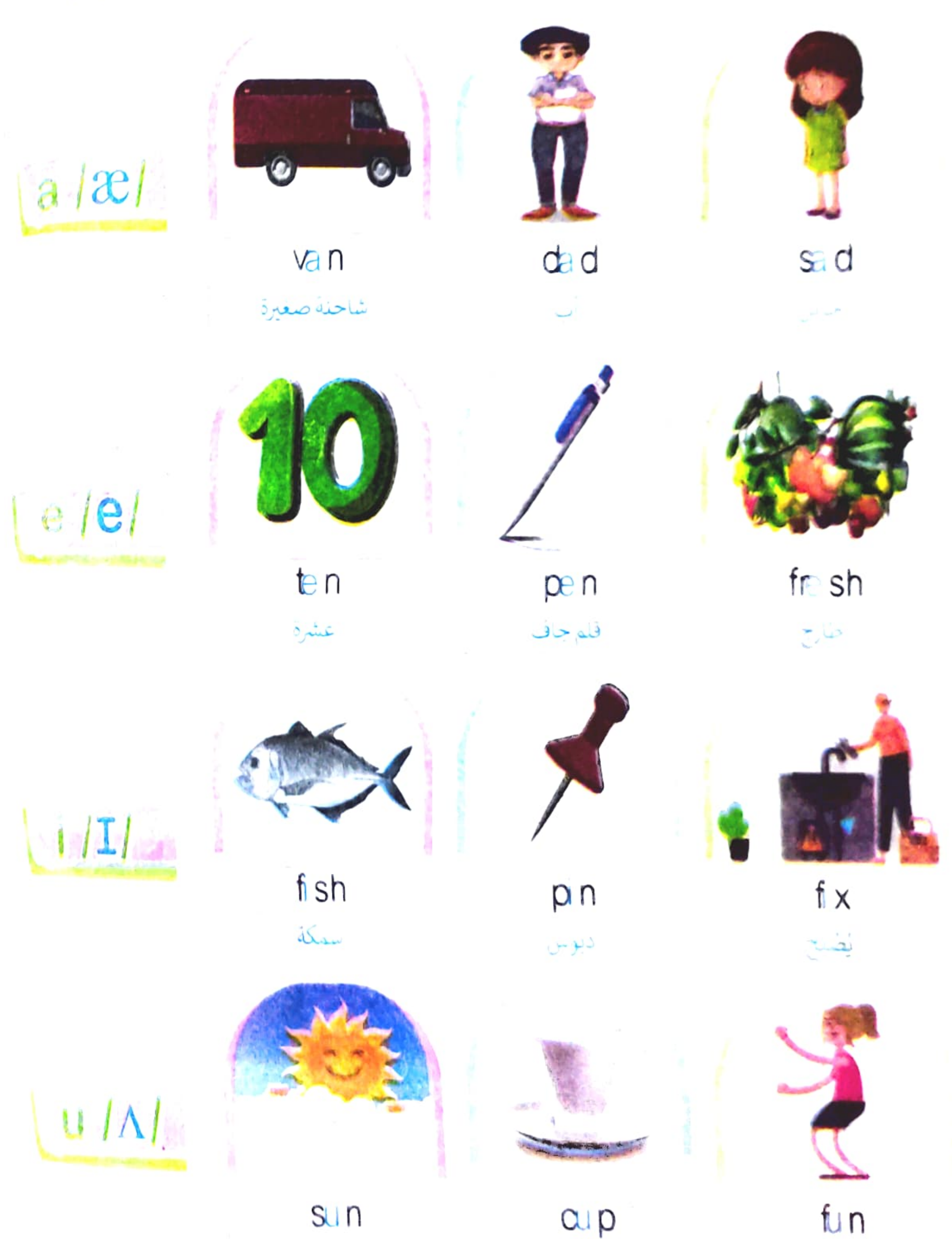
- Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The old fisherman's van is old. ( )
2. It was cold that day. ( )

Lesson (3)

Pronunciation

Short Vowel Sound



Read and complete.

اقرأ واكمل.

(man - ten - fish - cut - van - pin - sun - get - can - help - run- fit)

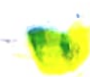





a /æ/	e /e/	i /I/	u /ʌ/
sad	fresh	fix	fun
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

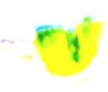


You can have fun in the sun.





There's a man in a van.

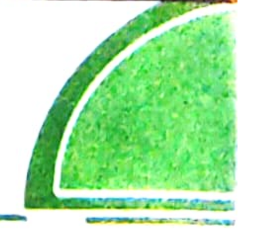


He sells fresh fish from the window.





There are ten men standing on one leg.



Lesson (3)

Prefix (dis-)

We use the prefix (dis-) at the beginning of a word to give the opposite meaning. نستخدم البادئة (-dis) في بداية الكلمة لتعطي عكس الكلمة .

dis = not

Word	Opposite
agree يتفق / يوافق	disagree لا يتفق / يرفض
appear يظهر	disappear يختفي
like يحب	dislike يكره
obey يطيع	disobey يعصي

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



She dislikes ice cream.

These friends disagree.



The boy is disappointed. He didn't pass the test.



I'm sorry because I disobeyed my mom.



The rabbit disappeared from the hat.

CLIL : MATH



Prime Numbers

الأعداد الأولية

A Prime Number is a number you can divide only by itself and 1.

العدد الأولي: هو عدد يقبل القسمة على نفسه و على رقم (1) فقط.

2



1



1

3



1 1



1

1 x 2 = 2
2 ÷ 2 = 1
2 ÷ 1 = 2

1 x 3 = 3
3 ÷ 3 = 1
3 ÷ 1 = 3

The smallest prime numbers are

(2,3,5,7,11,13,17,19,23,29,31,37,41,43,47,53,61,67,

71,73,79,83,89,97)

Note

Number (1) isn't a prime number because it can only be divided by one number which is itself.

العدد (1) ليس عددا أوليا لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه فقط.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The fisherman's .... stopped in front of my house.
   a) car b) train c) plane d) bike
2. He was very ....
   a) happy b) sad c) funny d) hungry
3. My .... was a mechanic.
   a) sister b) mother c) brother d) grandfather
4. My father .... the car.
   a) stopped b) thanked c) fixed d) taught

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... sells fresh fish.
   a) builder b) fisherman c) doctor d) vet
2. He drives an old ....
   a) horse b) camel c) bike d) van
3. He likes his job. He has ....
   a) fan b) van c) fun d) gun
4. It's very hot under the ....
   a) sun b) fun c) fan d) bun
5. She .... fish. She never eats it.
   a) likes b) enjoys c) loves d) dislikes
6. I can't see my cat. It ....
   a) disagreed b) disliked c) disappeared d) disobeyed
7. He didn't pass the test. He's ....
   a) funny b) happy c) disappointed d) excited
8. .... is a prime number.
   a) 6 b) 14 c) 12 d) 17

Help your child deal with such question

9. I'm sorry because I .... my dad.
   a) **obeyed** b) **liked** c) **disobeyed** d) **disliked**

10. I always .... with my brother. We're different.
   a) **disappear** b) **disagree** c) **disobey** d) **dislike**

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish."
One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help. Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van engine. "It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom. The old fisherman was surprised.
Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed! "Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The fisherman drives a ....
   a) **car** b) **taxi** c) **van** d) **bus**

2. .... fixed the van engine.
   a) **The fisherman** b) **Mom** c) **Grandpa** d) **Dad**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?
....

4. How many fish did the old man give Mom?
....

4 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- a fisherman sells fresh fish
....

Lessons (4 & 5) WRITING PROJECT

Vocabulary

respect	يحترم / احترام	exciting	مثير
carefully	بحرص / بانتباه	different	مختلف
patient	صبور	best	أفضل
trash	قمامة	surprising	مفاجئ / مدهش
questions	أسئلة	shelf	رف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — ***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
ask	يسأل	asked	give	يعطي	gave
learn	يتعلم	learned	throw	يلقي / يرمي	threw
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	show	يظهر	showed
change	يغير	changed	teach	يُعلم	taught

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get off the bus	ينزل من (الأوتوبيس / الحافلة)	say thank you	يقول أشكرك
show respect to	يظهر الاحترام لـ	think quickly	يفكر بسرعة
work for many hours	يعمل لساعات عديدة	ready to learn	مستعد للتعلم
for me	بالنسبة لي	It's hard work	إنه عمل شاق
It's exciting	إنه شئ مثير		

Definitions

respect	when you are polite and kind.	يحترم / احترام
patient	someone who doesn't get angry easily.	صبور

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



What are the good and bad things about being a teacher?



When people ask me, "What do you want to do?" I answer: "I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world."

عندما يسألني الناس، «ما الوظيفة التي تريد أن تقوم بها؟» أجيب: «أريد أن أصبح مدرسًا. بالنسبة لي، إنها أفضل وظيفة في العالم».

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting.

بالنسبة للمعلم، كل يوم مختلف. يسأل الطلاب دائمًا أسئلة مدهشة. يستطيع المعلم أن يغير حياة طلابه لذلك يحتاج المعلمون لأن يكونوا صبورين. فهم يعملون لساعات عديدة كل يوم. إنه عمل شاق، لكنه مثير.

Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.

يحتاج المعلمون للتفكير بسرعة. فهم يريدون تشجيع طلابهم. المعلم الجيد مستعد دائمًا للتعلم. يقوم المعلمون بتعليم طلابهم، ولكن الطلاب يقومون أيضًا بتعليم معلميهم. كل فرد في الفصل يعرف أشياء مختلفة.

Lessons (4 & 5)

Ask and answer.

اسأل وأجب.



What do you want to be?

ماذا تريد أن تكون؟



I want to be an electrician.

أريد أن أكون فني كهرباء.

Why do you want to be an electrician?

لماذا تريد أن تكون فني كهرباء؟

Because I want to fix things. I like helping people and I think electricity is interesting, but it can be dangerous!

لأني أريد أن أصلح الأشياء. أحب مساعدة الناس وأعتقد أن الكهرباء شيقة ولكنها قد تكون خطيرة!

Showing respect

إظهار الاحترام

I respect the cleaner.
I don't throw trash.

أحترم عامل النظافة. لا ألقي القمامة (على الأرض).



I respect the teacher.
I listen to him carefully.

أحترم المعلم. استمع إليه بانتباه.



How to show respect.

كيف تظهر الاحترام

I respect the librarian.
I put my books back on the shelf.

أنا أحترم أمين المكتبة. أضع كتبي مرة أخرى على الرف.

I respect the bus driver.
I say thank you when I get off the bus.

أحترم سائق الحافلة. أقول له شكرًا عندما أنزل من الحافلة.



Help your child ask and answ



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Being a teacher is not ....
   a) easy b) difficult c) quickly d) surprising
2. For a teacher, every day is ....
   a) the same b) good c) nice d) different
3. .... always ask surprising questions.
   a) Friends b) Students c) Babies d) Patients
4. Teachers need to .... quickly.
   a) play b) write c) think d) read

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Students ask surprising ....
   a) answers b) lives c) questions d) jobs
2. The teachers always .... their students.
   a) think b) learn c) encourage d) work
3. We .... respect to our teachers.
   a) show b) read c) listen d) thank
4. I think .... is the best job in the world.
   a) teaching b) electricity c) farm d) respect

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

teacher - encourage - quickly - questions

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising 1) .... Teachers need to think 2) .... They need to 3) .... their students. They need to be very patient. 4) .... can change their students' lives.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I want to be a teacher because I think teaching is the best job
ı the world. Teaching is exciting because every day is different
ɔr teachers. Students ask surprising questions. Teachers can
hange the students' lives. They encourage their students to do
etter. They work hard for long hours. They need to be patient.

) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about ....

   a) **farming** b) **teaching** c) **sports** d) **food**

2. Teachers .... their students to do better.

   a) **thank** b) **answer** c) **encourage** d) **work**

3) Answer the following questions.

3. Why is teaching exciting? ....

4. What does the writer want to be? ....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- what do you want to do

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) عن:

Being an electrician

Guiding words:

(exciting - connect - screwdriver - dangerous)

....

....

....

....



Review on Unit (6)

Industry


farming


fishing


education


tourism

Non-renewable energy


coal


gas


oil

Renewable energy


solar energy


wind energy

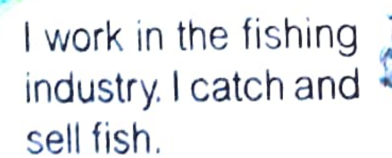

wave energy

What do you do?

What do you do?



I work in the fishing industry. I catch and sell fish.





a
/æ/


van


cat

e
/e/


ten


pen

i
/ɪ/




fish pin

u
/ʌ/




sun


run

Prefix dis-: disappear, disagree, dislike, disobey, disappointed

Math: Prime numbers

e.g. 2, 3, 5, etc.

$2 \div 2 = 1$ $2 \div 1 = 2$





A fisherman

I'm a fisherman. I wake up early every day. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

A farmer

I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. I look after the trees and give them water and nutrients. I pick the fruit. I send the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I sell some oranges to the supermarket.

A teacher

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. It's hard work, but it's exciting.

Dictation on Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

الزراعة	مكتبة
صيد السمك	السياحة
التعليم	مُعلم
صياد سمك	فلاح
شجرة	أمين مكتبة
مرشد	الطاقة

Lesson (2)

طاقة الرياح	الطاقة الشمسية
طاقة الأمواج	البترول
الفحم	الغاز
شجرة المانجو	نافذة
أطفال	خشب
نقود	بذرة
بجوار	جميل

Lesson (3)

محبط	محرك
شمس	شاحنة
سمكة	يصلح
غير موافق	يختفي
لا يطيع / يعصي	لا يحب / يكره

Lessons (4 & 5)

مدهش	يشجع
طلاب	يحترم
مثير	قمامة
صبور	رف
أفضل	مختلف

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.



Activities on Unit (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Teachers need to think ....
   a) quickly   b) slowly   c) happily   d) sadly
2. They need to .... their students.
   a) think   b) encourage   c) dislike   d) work
3. They need to be ....
   a) lazy   b) helpful   c) patient   d) brave
4. .... is hard work.
   a) Sleeping   b) Running   c) Farming   d) Teaching

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... grows food.
   a) guide   b) farmer   c) tourist   d) scientist
2. Mechanics .... cars.
   a) talk   b) fix   c) catch   d) grow
3. She .... ice cream.
   a) disagrees   b) disappears   c) disobeys   d) dislikes
4. I want to be a/an .... to fix things.
   a) fisherman   b) electrician   c) doctor   d) vet

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

sell - for - fruit - grow - after

I am a farmer. I 1) .... oranges. All year, I look 2) .... trees and give them water and nutrients. Then I pick the 3) .... I 4) .... some of my crops to the supermarket.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. Teachers can change their students' lives.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The teacher's job is not ....
   a) good   b) easy   c) difficult   d) hard
2. Teachers need to think ....
   a) sadly   b) quickly   c) slowly   d) happily

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can a teacher change? ....
4. What is the main idea of the text? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. What do you .... (wants) to be?
2. The snake .... (appeared). I can't see it.
3. Ali wants to .... (is) a doctor.
4. The boy is .... (appointed). He didn't pass the test.

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- i want to be an engineer

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A fisherman

Guiding words:

(fishing - boat - sea - work hard - catch)

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

change - show - carefully - teacher

oha : What do you want to be?

la : I want to be a 1) ....

oha : Why?

la : Because a teacher can 2) .... students' lives.

oha : How do you 3) .... respect to teachers?

la : I listen 4) .... to them.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

market - get up - fisherman - When

Adam: What do you do?

Hoda : I'm a 1) ....

Adam: 2) .... do you get up?

Hoda : I 3) .... very early every day.

Adam: Where do you sell the fish?

Hoda : I sell the fish in the 4) ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

1. the - bus - I - respect - driver - .

....

2. patient - is - teacher - very - My - .

....

3. do - you - What - do - ?

....

4. down - cut - Let's - tree - my - .

....



Activities on Review (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My aunt is a .... in America.
   a) mail carrier b) vet c) doctor d) teacher
2. She works .... all day.
   a) inside b) outside c) indoor d) indoors
3. It's not funny when it is too cold or ....
   a) cool b) warm c) hot d) nice
4. She sometimes carries heavy ....
   a) suitcase b) backpacks c) boxes d) mail bags

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The hospital is next .... the school.
   a) for b) to c) of d) off
2. The .... brings you to school.
   a) bus driver b) builder c) doctor d) electrician
3. He loves living on the water. So he lives on a ....
   a) plane b) houseboat c) tent d) apartment
4. We sometimes see the flash of ....
   a) storm b) lightning c) plug d) raining

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

dangerous - crocodile - job - animals

We sometimes think some 1).................... are scary or ugly but they are all important. The 2).................... is huge and scary. Spiders are also scary. Crocodiles and spiders are 3).................... but they do a very important 4)....................

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review (2)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. ن الأسئلة. ...النص وأجب

I want to be a teacher. For me, the teacher's job is the best in
e world. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask
ırprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to
ıcourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work
r many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers
an change their student's lives. Teachers teach their students, but
udents also teach their teachers.

Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about the .... job.
   a) doctor's b) teacher's c) vet's d) engineer's
2. Teachers need to be very ....
   a) sad b) nervous c) patient d) unkind

Answer the following questions.

3. What do students ask? ....
4. Who can change the students' lives? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

...اكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

.... (These) is my tape measure.

The school is .... (on) front of the park.

My father bought .... (these) mobile for me.

The rabbit .... (appeared) from the hat. I can't see it.

6 Punctuate the following. ...ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

what do you want to be

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

...فقرة ثمانية من (18) كلمة عن:

A farmer

Guiding words:

(farmer - grows - trees - picks - factory)



General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Rhim gazelle eat ....
   a) dates b) fruits c) leaves d) cookies
2. Rhim gazelles have long ....
   a) teeth b) hair c) horns d) arms
3. Rhim gazelles look very ....
   a) sad b) ugly c) bad d) beautiful
4. Rhim gazelles' .... protect them from the sun
   a) horns b) hair c) feet d) coats

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The .... connects pipes and faucets to give us water
   a) mail carrier b) mechanic c) electrician d) plumber
2. My friend is .... because he didn't pass the final exam
   a) excited b) disappointed c) different d) patient
3. " .... " means someone who doesn't lie
   a) Honest b) Emperor c) Curious d) Interesting
4. Farmers work in the .... habitat
   a) desert b) agricultural c) lakes d) rivers

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

quickly - surprising - change - knows - encourage

For a teacher every day is different. Students always ask 1) .... questions. A teacher can 2) .... their students' lives, so teachers need to be patient. Teachers need to think 3) .... Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class 4) .... different things.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



General Activities

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Khaled. I live with my parents in Damietta. We
nt different seeds to make the farm green. We use the Nile
ter to water the seeds. We grow many fruits like mangoes,
nges, and guavas. We raise farm animals like sheep, goats,
ws, and chickens. Cows and goats give us meat and milk.
e get fresh eggs from the chickens. The air isn't polluted. We
eathe fresh air. Life is good in our farm.

Choose the correct answer.

. Khaled lives with his ....

a) mom and dad b) cousins c) grandparents d) uncles

. The underlined word "polluted" means ....

a) healthy b) good c) unhealthy d) fresh

Answer the following questions.

What plants do we grow in our governorate? ....

What do we use to water the crops? ....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

The crocodile is .... (big) than the snake.

These .... (is) the electrician's tools.

What .... (does) librarians look after?

The kitchen is .... (above) to the living room.

Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

foxes and camels are desert animals

....

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My apartment

uiding elements:

How many rooms are there in your apartment?
What is your favorite room?



Listening Texts



Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I think we grow rice in Egypt. Egyptian farmers grow many vegetables like onions, tomatoes and potatoes. Egyptian farmers raise chickens to get eggs and meat. They keep cows to get milk.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I don't drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball in the park.

Lessons (4 & 5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I live in Minya. Minya is a governorate in Upper Egypt. Farmers can grow cotton, corn, wheat, dates and sugarcane in Minya. It is famous for "black honey". It is made from sugarcane. About six million people live in Minya.

Activities on Unit (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My mom made special food for us. It looks delicious. Egyptian farmers produce many kinds of fruits and vegetables that we eat. My mom says we also grow rice in Egypt.



Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Some animals are scary but they are important. The spiders are very helpful to farmers. They eat insects. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they eat insects, birds and lizards. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Camels are amazing. Their milk is delicious. Camels are perfect for the desert. They can live without water for a long time.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear is stronger than the pelican.

Lessons (4 & 5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice.

Activities on Unit (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they eat grass, leaves and plants. They have big ears and long horns.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tomatoes are delicious and important. We use tomatoes in most our food. Everyone can grow tomatoes on their balcony. Tomatoes have seeds inside.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

There are many habitats in Egypt. In Agricultural habitats, farmers work and grow food for us to eat. In the desert habitat, there is no much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. Forty years ago, the land was very dry. Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. The decided to buy some land.

Listening Texts

Lessons (4 & 5)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

apyrus is a very special plant. It is famous ecause Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to ake paper. They also made sandals and askets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of ater and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows the Nile Delta near the river.

Activities on unit (3)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

apyrus is a very special plant. It is famous ecause Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to ake paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and arm weather to grow quickly.

Review (1)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

amietta is an Egyptian governorate. Its land rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow many ops there such as rice and wheat. Fishermen atch thousands of fish in the sea. Goats, cows, nd sheep live in Damietta, too. Life is good in amietta.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

y name is Hamza. I live in an apartment. My vorite room is the living room. I play games with y brother in the living room. I help my mother in e kitchen. I play football on Friday.

Lesson (3 / A)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

n Ali. I live in a small village. My school is next to e hospital. Behind the hospital, there's a park. often play football in the park with my friends.

Lesson (3 / B)

Listen and circle the correct answer.

ly friend Hany lives on a boat in the summer. His arents work on tourist boats, so he goes with iem. They travel up and down the Nile. He likes ie summer very much.

Lessons (4 / 5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm Aya. I live in Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris.

Activities on unit (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My sister works at a supermarket near our house. People buy food at the supermarket. She checks the food is fresh. She is very kind and happy.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name is Ola. My father is a plumber. He is good at fixing pipes and faucets. My brother's an electrician. He loves making things work.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Amira is an electrician. She studied and practiced for three years before she became an electrician. She knows how to work safely with electricity. She says electricity is dangerous.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She wasn't lazy. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios and cell phones.

Lessons (4 & 5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

There are some good and bad points about being a mail carrier. On the one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise.

Activities on unit (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect the electricity so that we can use lights. The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon I sell my fish in the market.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Aya needed money. She cut down her mango tree. She sold the wood. She was happy. Now, there is no mango tree and no more wood.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The fisherman's car stopped in front of my house. He was very sad. My grandfather was a mechanic. He taught my father all about cars. My father fixed the car. The fisherman became happy and thanked my father. He gave my father ten fresh fish.

Lessons (4 & 5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly.

Activities on unit (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be patient. Teaching is hard work.

Review (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name is Hend. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. She says there are some cons for being a mail carrier. She works outside all day. It isn't funny when it is too cold or hot. She sometimes carries heavy mail bags.

General Activities

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Rhim gazelles are desert animals. They eat leaves. They have long horns. They look very beautiful. Their coats protect them from the sun

AL-BAHER

CONNECT

Final Revision

الصف الرابع الابتدائي

First Term



4th Primary



2025

Parents' Guide



Language Focus

Conjunctions

أدوات الربط

and (و)

We use **and** to add two ideas together.

نستخدم (and) لربط فكرتين معًا.



I eat vegetables, **and** I exercise.

but (لكن)

We use **but** to contrast two ideas.

نستخدم (but) لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.



I want to play football, **but** I hurt my leg.

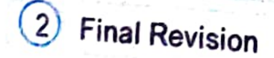
Look and read.

انظر و اقرأ.

I practice basketball on Wednesday,
and I walk home from school every day.



I love playing video games, **but**
I only play them on Saturday



Help your child identify the conjunctions (and & but).

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الروابط (and و but).



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The plants need water .... sunshine.
   a) **so** b) **but** c) **and** d) **because**
2. The kitchen was clean this morning, ... now I need to reclean it.
   a) **but** b) **so** c) **because** d) **and**
3. Camels can carry people .... things across the desert.
   a) **and** b) **because** c) **so** d) **but**
4. Camels are perfect for desert, ... they are noisy.
   a) **because** b) **and** c) **but** d) **so**
5. We plant a seed .... the plant grows.
   a) **but** b) **so** c) **and** d) **because**
6. The crocodiles are huge .... scary.
   a) **because** b) **but** c) **or** d) **and**
7. Some animals are scary, ... they are important.
   a) **so** b) **and** c) **because** d) **but**
8. Toka loves ice cream .... chocolate.
   a) **and** b) **but** c) **or** d) **because**
9. My mom is Egyptian, ... my dad is English.
   a) **and** b) **because** c) **so** d) **but**
10. I can speak English, ... I can't speak French.
    a) **so** b) **but** c) **and** d) **or**
11. We wash vegetables .... fruit well.
    a) **but** b) **and** c) **so** d) **because**
12. Sara is Egyptian, ... Suzanne is British.
    a) **and** b) **so** c) **but** d) **or**
13. He doesn't eat fruit, ... he likes vegetables.
    a) **so** b) **because** c) **and** d) **but**
14. I drink cola, ... I want to drink more water.
    a) **or** b) **and** c) **but** d) **so**

15. My sister plays tennis .... basketball.
a) but b) so c) and d) because

16. Mom is a scientist ... she likes looking at animals and plants.
a) because b) and c) but d) when

17. It's an interesting place, ... it's very cold sometimes.
a) because b) which c) and d) but

18. She loves pizza, ... she only eats one a week.
a) and b) because c) but d) or

19. Farmers keep chickens to get eggs .... meat.
a) but b) or c) and d) because

20. He wants to play football, ... he hurts his leg.
a) but b) and c) so d) where

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. He's a plumber .... (but) she is a teacher.
2. I studied hard, ... (and) I failed the exam.
3. We have an apartment .... (but) a little house.
4. I can walk .... (and) I can't fly.
5. I like running .... (but) swimming.
6. I don't like cola, ... (and) I like water.
7. It will be warm .... (so) sunny on Monday.
8. Mona likes cake, ... (because) she doesn't like ice cream.
9. I like reading .... (but) my sister like reading too.
10. I like football, ... (and) I don't like swimming.
11. Aya bought a dress, ... (so) Adam bought a new shirt.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Language

Comparative Adjectives صفات المقارنة

Usage:

- We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things.

نستخدم صفات المقارنة لنقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة تتكون من مقطع واحد.

Form:

adj. (الصفة) + er + than

strong — stronger than   old — older than

e.g. A mouse is smaller than an elephant.



Spelling rules

1- Short adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.

مع الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e)، نضيف فقط (r) للصفة.

nice — nicer than

e.g. The goat is nicer than the donkey.



2- Short adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

مع الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

thin → thinner than   big → bigger than



e.g. The snake is thinner than the crocodile.

3- Short adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بـ (حرف **(y)** مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن) فإننا نحول ال **(y)** إلى **(i)** ونضيف **(er)**.

noisy → noisier than



e.g. Parrots are noisier than spiders.

Long adjectives

الصفات الطويلة تتكون من مقطعين أو أكثر.

more أكثر / **less** أقل + **long adjective** (صفة طويلة) + **than**

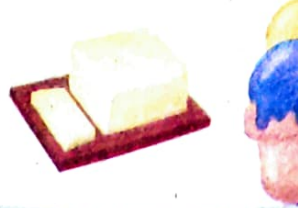
dangerous → more dangerous than
beautiful → more beautiful than
delicious → less delicious than

e.g. A snake is more dangerous than a fox.





e.g. Butter is less delicious than ice cream.







Help your child learn comparative adjectives.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم صفات المقارنة (المقارنة بين اثنين).



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The cat is .... than the mouse.
   a) heavy b) heavier c) heaviest d) the heaviest
2. The giraffe is .... dangerous than the lion.
   a) the least b) more c) less d) most
3. $\frac{1}{2}$ is .... than $\frac{1}{4}$.
   a) big b) the biggest c) biggest d) bigger
4. A cell phone is .... than a laptop.
   a) smaller b) the smallest c) small d) smallest
5. The car is .... than the bike.
   a) fastest b) the fastest c) fast d) faster
6. Which animal is ...., the bear or the dog?
   a) strong b) the strongest c) strongest d) stronger
7. The bear is .... than the pelican.
   a) big b) the biggest c) bigger d) biggest
8. A snake is .... dangerous than a fox.
   a) much b) more c) most d) the most
9. My car is .... than your car.
   a) long b) the longest c) longer d) longest
10. The giraffe is .... than the horse.
    a) taller b) the tallest c) tallest d) tall
11. The fennec fox is .... than the camel.
    a) small b) the smallest c) smaller d) smallest
12. Crocodiles are .... than fish.
    a) more dangerous b) the most dangerous
    c) less dangerous d) dangerous
13. Which animal is .... than the pelican?
    a) more intelligent b) intelligent
    c) the most intelligent d) most intelligent

14. An elephant is .... than a mouse.
a) biggest b) the biggest c) big d) bigger

15. Dogs are .... than elephants.
a) thinner b) the thinnest c) thinnest d) thin

16. Parrots are .... than spiders.
a) the noisiest b) noisy c) noisier d) noisiest

17. I think cats are .... than dogs.
a) nice b) the nicest c) nicer d) nicest

18. Camels are .... than horses.
a) the slowest b) slow c) slowest d) slower

19. Camels are .... than horses.
a) taller b) the tallest c) tallest d) tall

20. Horses are .... than camels.
a) fast b) the fastest c) faster d) fastest

21. Snakes are .... than ants.
a) the longest b) long c) longer d) longest

22. Horses are .... perfect for desert than camels.
a) less b) the most c) most d) much

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Camels are .... (slow) than horses.
2. Horses are .... (short) than camels.
3. Cats are .... (nice) than dogs.
4. Camels are .... (perfect) than horses for desert.
5. Snakes are .... (dangerous) than spiders.
6. Butter is .... (delicious) than ice cream.
7. Elephants are .... (big) than dogs.
8. A mouse is .... (small) than an elephant.
9. The giraffe is .... (tall) than the horse.
10. The dolphin is .... (dangerous) than the crocodile.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Superlative Adjectives صفات التفضيل



Usage:

- We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group.

نستخدم صفات التفضيل لمقارنة شخص أو شيء مع مجموعة أخرى.

Form:

1 Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

the + adj. الصفة **+ est**

tall → the tallest

e.g. The reed is the tallest.



Spelling rules:

1. Short adjectives ending in (-e), only add (-st).

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف (e) ، نضيف لها (st-) فقط .

nice → the nicest

e.g. My city is the nicest place to live.

2. Short adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

big → the biggest   thin → the thinnest

e.g. My cat is the biggest in our street.

3. Short adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

easy → the easiest   heavy → the heaviest

e.g. I have the heaviest suitcase.

2 Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

الأكثر the most
الأقل the least + adj. (صفة)



beautiful → the most beautiful

e.g. I think the rose is the most beautiful flower.
I think the sunflower is the least beautiful flower.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Which job is the .... interesting?
   a) more b) the most c) most d) much
2. The .... land animal is the giraffe.
   a) the tallest b) taller c) tallest d) tall
3. The elephant is the .... animal.
   a) heavy b) the heaviest c) heavier d) heaviest
4. A plant cell is the .... part of a plant.
   a) smallest b) the smallest c) smaller d) small
5. The snake is .... animal.
   a) scariest b) the scariest c) scary d) scarier
6. Maize is the .... delicious plant.
   a) more b) the most c) many d) most
7. The orange is the .... fruit on my farm.
   a) bigger b) the biggest c) big d) biggest
8. Our city is .... place to live in.
   a) nice b) nicest c) the nicest d) nicer
9. My cat is the .... in our street.
   a) big b) the biggest c) bigger d) biggest

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

10. I think the rose is .... beautiful flower.
    a) more b) the most c) most d) less
11. The daisy is the .... flower.
    a) most colorful b) more colorful c) less d) colorful
12. Sara is .... beautiful girl in the class.
    a) the most b) most c) more d) much
13. Ice cream is the .... delicious dessert.
    a) less b) the most c) most d) many
14. The whale is the .... sea animal.
    a) heavier b) the heaviest c) heavy d) heaviest
15. The butterfly is the .... insect.
    a) more beautiful b) less beautiful
    c) most beautiful d) the most beautiful

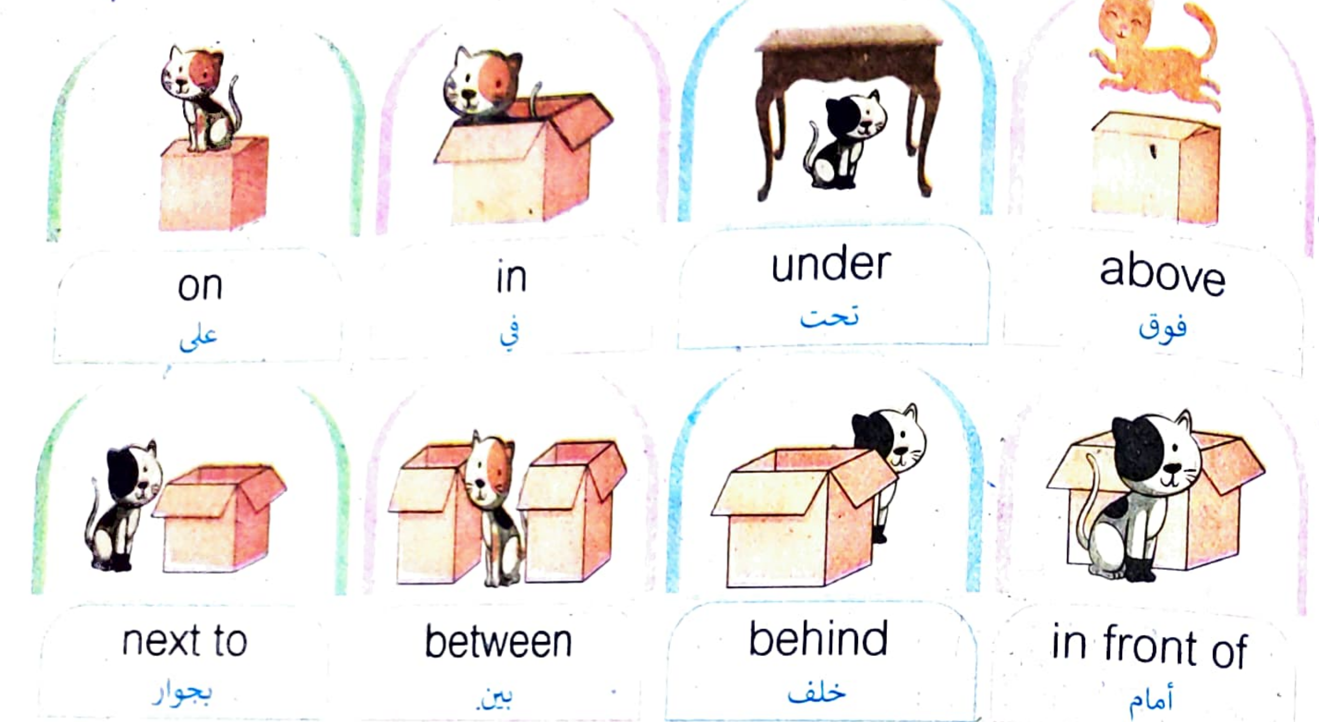
2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The sunflower is the .... (big) flower.
2. The daisy is the .... (short) flower.
3. Snakes are the .... (dangerous) animals.
4. Cats are the .... (nice) animals.
5. The daisy is the .... (small) flower.
6. The sunflower is the .... (heavy) flower.
7. Ali is .... (tall) boy in the class.
8. Maize is .... (delicious) plant.
9. The crocodile is .... (scary) animal.
10. The butterfly is .... (beautiful) insect.

Prepositions of place

حروف جر المكان





We use prepositions of place to say where something is.

نستخدم حروف جر المكان للتعبير عن مكان الشيء.

- The kitchen is next to the living room.
- The cat is on the box.
- My house is between the tall building and the tree.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live in a village .... to the Nile.
   a) **in front** b) **between** c) **behind** d) **next**
2. He lives .... a house.
   a) **between** b) **on** c) **under** d) **in**
3. There is an armchair .... the table and the couch.
   a) **behind** b) **on** c) **between** d) **next**
4. My house is .... a yellow house and a brown house.
   a) **on** b) **between** c) **behind** d) **in**
5. The tent is next .... the car.
   a) **at** b) **on** c) **in** d) **to**

Help your child use prepositions of place.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم حروف جر المكان.

6. There's a plant .... the couch.
   a) next b) behind c) between d) in front
7. There are 4 chairs and a table .... the balcony.
   a) between b) on c) of d) in
8. The table is .... the living room.
   a) between b) in c) front d) next
9. The hospital is in .... of the park.
   a) front b) next c) behind d) between
10. The park is .... the shopping mall.
   a) between b) in front c) next d) behind
11. Dad's office is .... of the park.
   a) in front b) between c) in d) next
12. The library is .... the supermarket and the school.
   a) next b) on c) behind d) between
13. There is a boy .... the tree.
   a) next b) in front c) in d) behind
14. The cat is .... the table.
   a) next b) in front c) under d) between

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرا واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. There is a ball .... (in) to the chair.
2. There is a picture .... (next) the wall.
3. There is a bed in .... (on) of the chair.
4. There is a table .... (in) the sofa and the chair.
5. There is a mouse .... (in front of) the chair. I can't see it.
6. There are some flowers .... (under) the vase.
7. Ali is sitting .... (next) the chair.
8. My house is .... (on) the zoo and the library.
9. There is a chair .... (on) to the sofa.
10. We sat .... (next) the tree and had lunch.

Demonstrative pronouns

ضمائر الإشارة

We use "**Demonstrative pronouns**" to say how close an object is to the speaker.

نستخدم "ضمائر الإشارة" لتوضيح مدى قرب الأشياء من المتحدث.

For singular or uncountable nouns

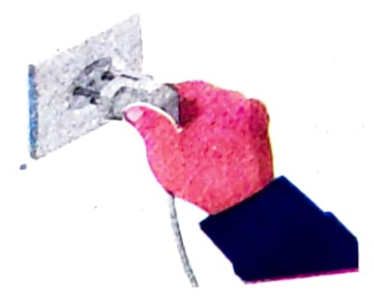
للأسماء المفردة أو الأسماء التي لا تُعد

This

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد / غير معدود قريب.

This is + singular noun ....

(اسم مفرد)



This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

هذا هو المقبس الذي يقوم الكهربائي بتثبيته.

That

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد / غير معدود بعيد.

That is + singular noun ....

(اسم مفرد)



That is the water dripping from the faucet.

هذا هو الماء الذى يتقاطر من الصنبور.

... child use the demonstrative pronouns.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخ...

For plural nouns
للأسماء الجمع

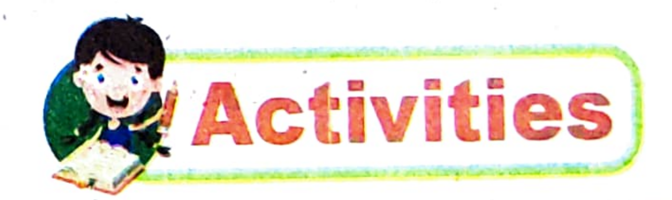
These	Those
تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.	تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.
These are + plural noun (اسم جمع)	**Those are + plural noun** (اسم جمع)




These are the plumber's tools.




Those drivers are driving the new buses.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... is a screwdriver.
   a) This b) These c) There d) Those
2. .... is the tape measure.
   a) They b) These c) Those d) That
3. .... are blocks.
   a) That b) This c) These d) Their
4. .... are the plumber's tools.
   a) The b) Those c) This d) That
5. .... 's the doctor.
   a) These b) They c) That d) Those

6. .... is my aunt.

a) Their b) These c) That d) Those

7. .... children are going to school.

a) Those b) This c) They d) That

8. That .... the driver's bus.

a) is b) did c) are d) were

9. These .... the plumber's tools.

a) was b) is c) am d) are

10. Those .... my clothes.

a) are b) was c) is d) am

11. Look at .... parrots flying in the sky.

a) these b) they c) those d) that

12. Look! .... is my pencil.

a) This b) These c) Their d) Those

13. Look at .... birds on the tree.

a) those b) the c) that d) this

14. .... is my watch.

a) This b) These c) They d) Those

15. .... are my books.

a) These b) That c) This d) Their

16. .... kites are flying in the sky.

a) That b) They c) Those d) This

17. .... is the sun.

a) Those b) These c) The d) That

18. Is .... your book?

a) this b) these c) those d) there

19. .... is the moon.

a) Their b) These c) Those d) That

20. These .... my pens.

a) is b) am c) are d) was

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Language

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. .... (These) is my brother.
2. That .... (are) my teacher.
3. These .... (is) my pens.
4. .... (That) are some apples.
5. .... (Those) is a goat.
6. These .... (is) chairs.
7. What is .... (these)?
8. What are .... (that)?
9. These .... (is) cameras.
10. This .... (are) a brown cat.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

1. plumber's - the - These - are - tools - .
....
2. fixing - the - This - socket - the - is - electrician - .
....
3. fixed - car - is - mechanic - That - the - who - my - .
....
4. carrier's - are - the - mail - Those - parcels - .
....

The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Form: (I / We / You/ They) + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) ......

e.g. - I play football. - They watch TV.

(He / She / It) + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) + (s/es/ ies) ......

e.g. - He plays football. - She watches TV.

Spelling rules:



1. We add (es) to the verb that ends in (ss, sh, ch, o, x, z).

نضيف (es) للفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (ss, sh, ch, o, x, z).

go → goes
brush → brushes
watch → watches
pass → passes

e.g. - Ali goes to bed at ten o'clock.



2. If the verb ends in (a consonant + y), we change (y) into (i) then we add (es).

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن نحول (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (es).

study → studies
cry → cries



3. If the verb ends in (a vowel + y), we add (s).

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) يسبقه حرف متحرك نضيف (s).

play → plays
stay → stays

Usage:

- To express facts. يستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق.
  - The sun rises in the east.
- To express habits. للتعبير عن العادات.
  - They go to school every day.

Help your child revise the present simple tense.

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة زمن المضارع البسيط.

Language

Keywords

الكلمات الدالة:

always دائمًا	usually عادة	often غالبًا
sometimes أحيانًا	every (day, ...) كل	never أبدًا

e.g. - I always go to school. - She sometimes plays tennis.

Negative

النفي:

(I / We / You / They) + don't + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) ......

e.g. - We don't go to the museum.

(He / She / It) + doesn't + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) ......

e.g. - He doesn't play tennis.

(Yes / No) question

السؤال بـ (هل):

Do + I / we / you / they + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) ......?

e.g. - Do they like fish? - Yes, they do. - No, they don't.

Does + (he / she / it) + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) ......?

e.g. - Does he play tennis? Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

Wh- question

السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Q.W. + do + (I / we / you/ they)+ inf......?

e.g. - How do you feel? - I feel happy.

Q.W. + does +(he / she / it) + inf.........?

e.g. - What does he do on Saturdays?
- He takes photos with his dad.

Help your child revise the present simple tense.
ساعد طفلك في مراجعة زمن المضارع البسيط.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Mechanics .... cars.
   a) fix b) fixes c) was fixing d) fixing
2. The dentist .... my teeth.
   a) checks b) checking c) check d) are checking
3. Builders .... our houses.
   a) is building b) builds c) building d) build
4. The garbage collector .... out the garbage.
   a) take b) are taking c) takes d) taking
5. The mail carrier .... letters.
   a) delivers b) deliver c) delivering d) are delivering
6. I .... my teacher. I listen to him carefully.
   a) respect b) respects c) respecting d) is respecting
7. What .... the old man sell?
   a) do b) has c) does d) doing
8. Farmers .... food.
   a) grow b) growing c) is growing d) grows
9. Fishermen .... fish.
   a) catch b) catching c) catches d) is catching
10. Mr. Amr .... us math.
    a) teaching b) teach c) teaches d) are teaching
11. The taxi driver .... very badly.
    a) drive b) drives c) are driving d) driving
12. They don't .... fish.
    a) caught b) catching c) catch d) catches
13. Who .... in a school?
    a) work to b) working c) is worked d) works
14. The plumbers .... the pipes so we have water.
    a) connect b) connects c) connecting d) is connecting



Language

15. The cleaner .... the school clean.
    a) keep b) are keeping c) keeps d) keeping
16. The bus drivers .... the children to school.
    a) is bringing b) brings c) bring d) bringing
17. How does Sherifa .... her paragraph?
    a) starting b) am starting c) start d) starts
18. Mail carriers .... to a lot of people.
    a) is speaking b) speak c) speaks d) speaking
19. My aunt .... work at 6 o'clock.
    a) starts b) are starting c) starting d) start
20. What .... we need to save electricity?
    a) does b) do c) is doing d) doing
21. The garbage collector .... to clean the city.
    a) help b) are helping c) helps d) helping
22. These mechanics .... in the repair shop.
    a) is working b) working c) work d) works
23. We always .... to help each other.
    a) needing b) is needing c) needs d) need
24. Why .... he need to save electricity?
    a) was b) do c) does d) doing
25. They don't .... electricity.
    a) save b) saving c) saves d) saved

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I .... (wakes) up very early every day.
2. She comes back and .... (sell) her fish in the market.
3. He .... (look) after the trees.
4. A librarian .... (work) in a school.
5. I don't .... (picks) up the fruit.
6. The guide .... (don't) sell fish.
7. Why does Malak .... (cuts) down the mango tree?
8. What .... (do) the old man sell?





كيف تكتب جملة

Statement الجملة الخبرية

The sentence order

Subject فاعل اسم / ضمير		*Verb* فعل مضارع / ماضي		*Complement* تكملة الجملة اسم / صفة / حال / ظرف
The mail carrier	→	delivers	→	letters.
Snakes	→	are	→	scary.
He	→	is	→	kind.
We	→	visited	→	our grandparents.
Ali	→	came	→	early.





قد يكون الفاعل اسم أو ضمير يحل محل الاسم.



Language



Imperative

جملة الأمر

أمر مثبت	* نبدأ بمصدر الفعل inf.

e.g. - Clean the board.

أمر منفي	* نبدأ بـ Don't ثم مصدر الفعل.

e.g. - Don't throw garbage.

Question

السؤال

Yes / No question

- السؤال بمعنى هل ويبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص.

(Do, Does, Did, Is, Are, Was, Were, Can, Could, Will, Would)

فعل مساعد/ ناقص + فاعل + الفعل + باقي الجملة ?

e.g. - Do you like your ship?

- Is Sara kind?

- Can you swim?

Wh- question

السؤال بأداة استفهام

- يبدأ بأداة أستفهام: (Who , Where ,When ,What , Which , Why)

أداة استفهام + فعل مساعد/ ناقص + فاعل + الفعل + باقي الجملة ?

Write a sentence under each picture.

اكتب جملة تحت كل صورة.

1



He - boy

....

2



Miss Mona - English

....

3



She - gets up

....

4



Farmers - vegetables

....

5



Children - football

....

6



Ice cream - delicious

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع

Unit (1)

I feel good

Vocabulary




chicken
دجاج



grapes
عنب



milk
حليب



onions
بصل



rice
أرز



potatoes
بطاطس



bananas
موز



mangoes
مانجو



sugarcane
قصب السكر



watermelon
بطيخ

Phonics

Short vowels



bag
حقيبة



mom
أم



mix
يخلط



Long vowels



cake
كيك



nose
أنف



rice
أرز



Prefix (re-) = again

repaint	reclean	remake	redo
يعيد تلوين	يعيد تنظيف	يعيد تصنيع	يعيد عمل شيء



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Egyptian farmers .... many things.
   a) produce b) play c) write d) think
2. They grow .... and fruits.
   a) drinks b) vegetables c) wood d) grass
3. They raise .... to get eggs and meat.
   a) cows b) donkeys c) chickens d) goats
4. They use water from the Nile to .... the plants.
   a) cut b) feed c) eat d) water

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Cheng was good at .... things.
   a) eating b) cutting c) growing d) feeding
2. He put the .... in the soil.
   a) seeds b) leaves c) fruits d) beans
3. He gave them ....
   a) milk b) juice c) water d) oil
4. The seeds were ....
   a) dead b) good c) nice d) alive

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

Fishermen - rich - famous - farmers

The land in Damietta governorate is 1) .... in nutrients. The 2) .... can grow rice and vegetables. 3) .... catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is very 4) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. In a competition everyone tries to ....
   a) lay   b) win   c) sleep   d) lose
2. A palace is where an emperor ....
   a) play   b) travels   c) lives   d) visits
3. Someone who is honest ....
   a) doesn't lie   b) line   c) lies   d) lay
4. An emperor is someone who is like a ....
   a) king   b) vet   c) doctor   d) farmer
5. My grandmother raises ....
   a) lions   b) cheetahs   c) chickens   d) tigers
6. Farmers .... chickens in Egypt.
   a) grow   b) raise   c) do   d) water
7. We .... rice in Egypt.
   a) raise   b) write   c) grow   d) think
8. I drink .... for breakfast.
   a) milk   b) oil   c) gas   d) potatoes
9. .... grow vegetables and fruits.
   a) Teachers   b) Doctors   c) Plumbers   d) Farmers
10. We grow vegetables like .... and onions.
   a) mangoes   b) bananas   c) potatoes   d) watermelon
11. The land in Damietta governorate is .... in nutrients.
   a) poor   b) rich   c) sad   d) bad
12. .... catch fish in the sea every day.
   a) Fishermen   b) Doctors   c) Farmers   d) Cleaners
13. I live .... Giza governorate.
   a) on   b) in   c) at   d) with
14. Damietta is famous for Domiati ....
   a) coffee   b) milk   c) butter   d) cheese
15. .... food comes from Egypt? - Rice.
   a) Which   b) Where   c) When   d) How

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in Damietta.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The land in Damietta is rich in ....
   a) oxygen b) nutrients c) sugarcane d) salt
2. .... catch thousands of fish in the sea.
   a) Teachers b) Engineers c) Farmers d) Fishermen

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can farmers grow in Damietta?
....
4. How many people live in Damietta? ....

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My uncle is a farmer. He has a farm. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, bananas, watermelons and wheat. He keeps a cow, a horse, a camel and a donkey. He raises chickens to get eggs.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. My uncle keeps a ....
   a) dog b) cat c) cow d) lion
2. My uncle .... wheat.
   a) keeps b) grows c) writes d) plays

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does your uncle do?
....
4. Why does he raise chicken?
....

Unit (1)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We don't eat candy, ... (and) we like fruit.
2. I play football .... (so) basketball.
3. My son is tall .... (because) my daughter is tall, too.
4. My mother cooks delicious food .... (but) we all love it.
5. We eat vegetables .... (so) do exercise.
6. I like to play, ... (because) I hurt my leg.
7. I can speak English, ... (and) I can't speak Chinese.
8. I love playing video games, ... (so) I only play on the weekend.
9. My favorite fruits are bananas .... (but) mangoes.
10. Ali likes healthy food .... (or) he exercises every day.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. who never drinks cola

....

2. maged thinks that Egyptian food is yummy

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Egyptian farmers

Guiding words:

(grow - vegetables - fruits - raise chickens - eggs - meat)

....

....

....

Unit (2) Desert animals

Vocabulary


camel
جمل


eagle
نسر


pelican
بجعة


spider
عنكبوت


crocodile
تمساح


snake
ثعبان


rhim gazelle
غزال الريم


fennec fox
ثعلب الفَنِك


fur
فرو


beak
منقار


horns
قرون


fast
سريع


slow
بطيء


heavy
ثقيل


beautiful
جميل

Phonics

b /b/

bee
نحلة

beak
منقار

bird
طائر


bear
دب



p /p/


peas
بسلة


pelican
بجعة


pin
دبوس


pear
كمثرى



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. .... are amazing.
   a) Rats b) Camels c) Cows d) Horses
2. They are beautiful, ... animals.
   a) strong b) weak c) long d) lazy
3. They .... things and people.
   a) eat b) drink c) carry d) hurt
4. We can use their .... to make clothes.
   a) feet b) milk c) eye d) fur

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The fennec fox lives in the ....
   a) forest b) farm c) river d) desert
2. It's .... than other foxes.
   a) shorter b) taller c) smaller d) bigger
3. It needs big .... to hear insects.
   a) eyes b) ears c) legs d) hands
4. The fennec fox .... heat from its ears.
   a) gets b) earns c) loses d) wins

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

water - close - large - sand

Camels are perfect for the desert. They have 1) .... flat feet so they don't sink in the 2) .... Camels can live without 3) .... for a long time. They have special ways to 4) .... their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Camels have large, flat ....
   a) ears b) feet c) eyes d) legs
2. Pelicans have ....
   a) fur b) claws c) noses d) beaks
3. Snakes are ....
   a) beautiful b) nice c) amazing d) dangerous
4. The fennec fox lives in the ....
   a) sea b) lake c) desert d) dessert
5. Crocodiles are ....
   a) nice b) friendly c) scary d) kind
6. Spiders eat insects. They are ....
   a) helpful b) huge c) enormous d) thin
7. Rhim gazelles have yellow-white ....
   a) eyes b) feet c) wings d) coats
8. Horses like to drink .... water.
   a) salt b) dirty c) fresh d) bad
9. The fennec fox's thick .... keeps it warm.
   a) eyes b) fur c) feathers d) peel
10. Rhim gazelles have long ....
    a) ears b) eyes c) feet d) horns
11. The .... live in the desert.
    a) camels b) dolphins c) crocodiles d) starfish
12. The pelican has a long ....
    a) paw b) beak c) fur d) ear
13. Horses eat ....
    a) grass b) chicken c) eggs d) meat
14. Camels are perfect for the ....
    a) forest b) river c) lake d) desert

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fox loses heat from its ears. At night it's cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The fennec fox has big ....
   a) **nose** b) **legs** c) **ears** d) **eyes**
2. It's .... in the desert at night.
   a) **sunny** b) **rainy** c) **hot** d) **cold**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
4. How does the thick fur help the fennec fox? ....

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are many beautiful animals live in the desert. Rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelle look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they didn't need to drink a lot of water.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The word " .... " means to keep them safe.
   a) **protect** b) **live** c) **leave** d) **look**
2. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) **fennec fox** b) **rhim gazelles** c) **plants** d) **spiders**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why are the yellow-white coats useful to rhim gazelles? ....
4. Where do rhim gazelles live? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Crocodiles are .... (most) dangerous than fish.
2. The elephant is .... (big) than the hippo.
3. The fennec fox is smaller .... (then) the camel.
4. Ice cream is .... (most) delicious than butter.
5. My suitcase is .... (heavy) than yours.
6. Camels live .... (long) than horses.
7. I think spiders are .... (scary) than ants.
8. Snakes are .... (much) dangerous than spiders.
9. Snakes are .... (thin) than crocodiles.
10. Ali is faster .... (then) Ahmed.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. which animals are scary

....

2. a snake is more dangerous than a fox

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The fennec fox

Guiding words:

(live - desert - eat - insects - big ears - fur)

....

....

....

Unit (3)

Why do we grow plants?

Plants


seeds
بذور


roots
جذور


shoot
نبتة/بُرعم


soil
تربة زراعية


reeds
نبات القصب/البوص


flower
زهرة


lotus flower
زهرة اللوتس


acacia
شجرة السنط


leaf
ورقة شجر


rose
وردة


sunflower
زهرة عباد الشمس


tamarisk
شجرة الطرفاء


daisy
أقحوان - زهرة الربيع


bean plant
نبات الفول


orange tree
شجرة البرتقال



Phonics


/sl/



/sw/


slice
شريحة


sleep
ينام


slippers
شبشب/نعال


switch
مفتاح (كهرباء)


swim
يعوم / يسبح



sweets
حلوى


sweep
يكنس


swan
بجعة





Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

Tomatoes have .... inside.

a) leaves b) roots c) seeds d) steams

We can take the seed and grow .... tomatoes.

a) old b) new c) bad d) young

We plant seeds and the plant ....

a) plays b) sleeps c) dies d) grows

The roots grow .... the soil.

a) under b) on c) above d) next

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The seeds need .... and water to grow.

a) sunlight b) moonlight c) dark d) sunset

2. The seed grows .... under the soil.

a) branches b) stems c) leaves d) roots

3. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller .... the soil.

a) in b) above c) under d) next

4. The full plant grows leaves and ....

a) leaves b) roots c) seeds d) flowers

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

paper - famous - warm - water

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is 1) .... because ancient Egyptians used it to make 2) .... It needs a lot of .... and .... weather to grow quickly.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a) **fruits** b) **leaves** c) **seeds** d) **roots**
2. We .... the plant, and it grows flowers.
   a) **water** b) **cut** c) **eat** d) **drink**
3. The .... grow under the soil.
   a) **leaves** b) **roots** c) **shoots** d) **branches**
4. Acacia tree grows in .... It doesn't need a lot of water.
   a) **lakes** b) **rivers** c) **deserts** d) **seas**
5. Reed grows near the .... It needs a lot of water.
   a) **rivers** b) **desert** c) **sky** d) **mountain**
6. Farmers work in the .... habitat.
   a) **desert** b) **rivers** c) **lakes** d) **agricultural**
7. Farmers need .... to grow a new plant.
   a) **seeds** b) **leaves** c) **shoots** d) **flowers**
8. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
   a) **green** b) **pink** c) **black** d) **blue**
9. Papyrus is a very .... plant.
   a) **small** b) **special** c) **huge** d) **heavy**
10. The Ancient Egyptians made paper from ....
    a) **papyrus** b) **stone** c) **water** d) **sand**
11. The sunflower opens and .... the sun.
    a) **sleeps** b) **needs** c) **closes** d) **faces**
12. We used rain water to .... the seeds.
    a) **sleep** b) **run** c) **water** d) **cut**
13. We .... the plant every day, and it grows flowers.
    a) **play** b) **sleep** c) **eat** d) **water**
14. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called ....
    a) **information** b) **fraction** c) **germination** d) **cutting**
15. The plant has green ....
    a) **seeds** b) **soil** c) **roots** d) **leaves**

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are many different plant habitats. There is the agricultural habitat. Farmers can work here. They grow food for us to eat. Some plants grow near rivers and lakes. Those plants need a lot of water. There is also desert habitat where there is not much water. Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of water.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Plants that live in the .... don't need a lot of water.
   a) **sea** b) **river** c) **lake** d) **desert**
2. What does the word "much" mean? ....
   a) **a little** b) **a lot of** c) **a few** d) **little**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do plants that grow near rivers and lakes need? ....
4. Where can farmers work? ....

✷ Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Plants are very important for us. In Egypt, farmers grow different plants. We are growing tomato plants on the balcony. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil, The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. We can take the .... and grow new tomatoes.
   a) **roots** b) **fruits** c) **seeds** d) **leaves**
2. This text is about " .... "
   a) **jobs** b) **animals** c) **tomatoes** d) **books**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is germination? ....
4. What do tomatoes have inside? ....

Unit (3)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The butterfly is the .... (more) beautiful insect.
2. A snake is the .... (scary) animal.
3. The elephant is .... (heaviest) animal.
4. My village is the .... (nice) place to live.
5. Rose is the .... (big) one of them.
6. Crocodile are the .... (more) dangerous animal.
7. The sunflower is the .... (big) flower.
8. Hani is the .... (fast) one in the class.
9. Math is the .... (more) difficult subject.
10. The turtle is the .... (slow) animal.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي:

1. why are plants green

....

2. farmers grow food for us to eat

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Papyrus

Guiding words:

(famous - Ancient Egyptians - paper - water - warm weather)

....

....

....

Unit (4) Where do you live?

Vocabulary

Buildings



house
منزل



apartment
شقة



tent
خيمة



houseboat
منزل عائم



hospital
مستشفى



post office
مكتب بريد



school





supermarket
سوبر ماركت



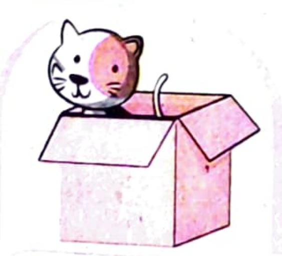
shopping mall



Prepositions of place



on
على



in
في



under
تحت



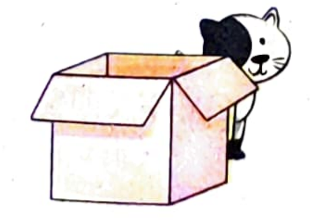
above
فوق



next to
بجوار



between
بين



behind
خلف



in front of
أمام



Phonics




fish
سمكة


foot
قدم


fan
مروحة


face
وجه




van
شاحنة


living room
غرفة المعيشة

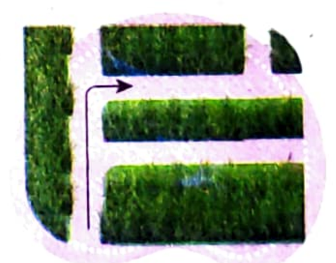

vegetables
خضراوات

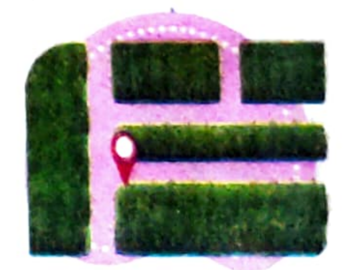
Directions


Turn left
اتجه يسارًا


Go straight ahead
سر للأمام مباشرة


Turn right
اتجه يمينًا


Take the second right.
خد المنعطف الثاني يمينًا.


It's on the corner.
إنه على الناصية.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live in an ....
   a) house b) farm c) tent d) apartment
2. My favorite room is the ....
   a) bedroom b) bathroom c) kitchen d) living room
3. I play games with my ....
   a) father b) brother c) sister d) mother
4. The living room is ....
   a) small b) big c) narrow d) tiny

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There are .... beds in my bedroom.
   a) two b) three c) four d) five
2. There are two .... and a table.
   a) sofas b) chairs c) mats d) ovens
3. The table is .... the two beds.
   a) next b) in front c) between d) in
4. There is a book .... the table.
   a) behind b) next c) in d) on

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

people - beach - Egypt - big

I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of 1) .... on the Red Sea. It's a 2) .... city. About 190.000 3) .... live here. There's a 4) .... and there are lots of interesting things to do.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. In the desert, some people live in a ....
   a) houseboat b) tent c) ship d) school
2. The .... is where we go when we are sick.
   a) supermarket b) school c) zoo d) hospital
3. Go .... ahead then turn right.
   a) right b) behind c) left d) straight
4. Alexandria is a large ....
   a) city b) village c) country d) town
5. A lot of .... visit Hurghada.
   a) animals b) insects c) tourists d) birds
6. We can buy food at the ....
   a) supermarket b) museum c) park d) hospital
7. I sleep in a big ....
   a) garden b) kitchen c) bathroom d) bedroom
8. My mom cooks in the ....
   a) living room b) bedroom c) kitchen d) bathroom
9. My brother lives on a .... He loves living on water.
   a) houseboat b) tent c) apartment d) balcony
10. We have a big balcony in our new ....
    a) apartment b) car c) tent d) bathroom
11. We eat our breakfast in the ....
    a) living room b) bathroom c) dining room d) bath
12. We take a shower in the ....
    a) dining room b) kitchen c) bathroom d) living room
13. I talk to my family and watch TV in the ....
    a) living room b) bathroom c) bedroom d) kitchen
14. We learn at ....
    a) supermarket b) school c) park d) zoo
15. We travel up and .... the Nile..
    a) down b) in c) on d) at

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I love my town. It is small, but it has stores, offices, a school and many other places. I walk to school every morning. My school is next to the hospital. There's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The word "small" is the opposite of ....
   a) **tiny** b) **big** c) **weak** d) **strong**
2. I play .... in the park.
   a) **handball** b) **football** c) **basketball** d) **tennis**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How do you go to school? ....
4. Where is your school? ....

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Omar. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. I play video games in the living room. I also love my bedroom because I can relax and do my homework quietly.

There is a balcony. I can see the whole street. My father works in the desert so he lives in a tent. My friend Adel and his family live in a houseboat. It's small, but he loves living on water.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. My friend Adel lives in a/an ....
   a) **apartment** b) **houseboat** c) **tent** d) **house**
2. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) **different homes** b) **rooms** c) **games** d) **jobs**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Omar live? ....
4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The cat is next .... (of) the chair.
2. The trees are .... (next) of the house.
3. I like sitting .... (under) Ali and Ahmed.
4. The children are playing .... (under) the park.
5. .... (What) is the park? It's next to the zoo.
6. The cat is .... (next) the bed and the table.
7. The supermarket is .... (at) the corner.
8. .... (Turns) right. The park is on the left.
9. .... (Going) straight ahead.
10. I live .... (above) Cairo.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. where is the park

....

2. it's between the school and the supermarket

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة انشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My apartment

Guiding words:

(big - new - favorite - balcony)

....

....

....

Unit (5) Where do you work?

Jobs



bus driver
سائق أتوبيس



electrician
فني كهرباء



mail carrier
ساعي البريد



mechanic
ميكانيكي



plumber
سباك



garbage collector
جامع القمامة

Phonics

Two-syllable words كلمات ذات مقطعين

teach er



Three-syllable words كلمات ذات ثلاث مقاطع

me chan ic



ar chi tect



Four-syllable words كلمات ذات أربع مقاطع





Stress الشدة

dentist driv...



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The .... are helpful.
   a) plumbers b) teachers c) doctors d) farmers
2. The plumbers connect the .... so that we have water.
   a) books b) pipes c) computers d) wires
3. The .... keep our school clean.
   a) plumbers b) students c) teachers d) cleaners
4. The garbage collectors .... away our garbage.
   a) take b) give c) get d) do

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... takes the children to school.
   a) bus driver b) mechanic c) plumber d) electrician
2. A mechanic .... the buses.
   a) reads b) fixes c) connects d) takes
3. A plumber fixes the pipes and ....
   a) buses b) electricity c) faucets d) chairs
4. A garbage .... takes away the garbage.
   a) actor b) doctor c) baker d) collector

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

socket - shock - wet - dangerous

How can we use electricity safely? Never touch anything electrical with 1) .... hands. Electricity is very 2) .... You can get an electric 3) .... or start a fire. Never put anything into a 4) .... , only use plugs.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A/An .... connects the electricity.
   a) **plumber** b) **teacher** c) **electrician** d) **vet**
2. When there is a storm, we see a flash of ....
   a) **dark** b) **sun** c) **lightning** d) **light**
3. When I was young, I played with ....
   a) **blocks** b) **faucets** c) **garbage** d) **electricity**
4. You need a .... to fix the car.
   a) **teacher** b) **plumber** c) **mail carrier** d) **mechanic**
5. The bus drivers .... children to school.
   a) **wake** b) **write** c) **connect** d) **bring**
6. My little brother is .... He loves experiments.
   a) **angry** b) **curious** c) **sad** d) **patient**
7. If you get an electric .... ,you can't control your body.
   a) **storm** b) **light** c) **shock** d) **socket**
8. A mail carrier delivers ....
   a) **garbage** b) **trash** c) **parcels** d) **electricity**
9. Don't touch the hot plate. It can .... you.
   a) **burn** b) **freeze** c) **heat** d) **boil**
10. The .... knows how to work safely with electricity.
    a) **teacher** b) **plumber** c) **electrician** d) **doctor**
11. My father carried a .... to open old radios.
    a) **tape measure** b) **socket** c) **screwdriver** d) **spoon**
12. I wake .... very early every day.
    a) **in** b) **on** c) **up** d) **at**
13. It's very .... to touch electrical things with wet hands.
    a) **safe** b) **good** c) **dangerous** d) **nice**
14. A .... fixes pipes and faucets.
    a) **teacher** b) **mechanic** c) **plumber** d) **electrician**
15. My brother is a .... He fixes cars and buses.
    a) **mechanic** b) **plumber** c) **electrician** d) **teacher**

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was " How does it work?". She learned about safety with electricity.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Lara was very .... when she was a child.
   a) sad b) curious c) angry d) happy
2. Lara learned about safety with ....
   a) fishing b) electricity c) engineering d) teaching

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Lara love when she was a child? ....
4. What did she always carry? ....

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When Dalia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she became older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Dalia when you want to change something in your house.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text talks about ....
   a) Dalia's sister b) Dalia c) Mona d) Heba
2. Dalia always carried a ....
   a) tape measure b) doll c) dog d) pen

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why did Dalia use a tape measure? ....
4. Do you think Dalia in the future can work as an electrician or an architect? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. This .... (are) the mail carrier.
2. These .... (mechanic) work in the repair shop.
3. .... (That) drivers are driving the new buses.
4. These .... (is) the faucets in our bathrooms.
5. .... (These) is the garbage collector who collects our trash.
6. .... (That) are my books.
7. This .... (are) my blue pen.
8. That .... (are) the water dripping from the faucet.
9. Those .... (is) the mail carrier's parcels.
10. This is my .... (aunts).

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. who helps you at home

....

2. this is a screwdriver

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Different jobs

Guiding words:

(plumber - connects - electrician - electricity - cleaner - bus driver)

....

....

....

Unit (6)

What do you do?

Vocabulary

Industry

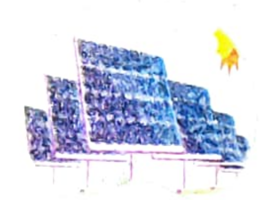

education
التعليم


farming
الزراعة


fishing
صيد السمك


tourism
السياحة

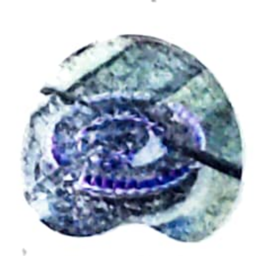
Energy


solar energy
الطاقة الشمسية


wind energy
طاقة الرياح


wave energy
طاقة الأمواج


coal
الفحم


gas
الغاز


oil
البترول

Phonics

Short Vowel Sound



		
van	dad	sad
شاحنة صغيرة	أب	حزين



		
ten	pen	fresh
عشرة	قلم جاف	طازج



		
fish	pin	fix
سمكة	دبوس	يُصْلِح



		
sun	cup	fun
الشمس	فنجان	مُتعة / مَرَح



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I work in the .... industry.
   a) **education** b) **fishing** c) **farming** d) **tourism**
2. People come to my ....
   a) **village** b) **country** c) **farm** d) **town**
3. It's my job to explain the ....
   a) **math** b) **English** c) **history** d) **science**
4. I tell the tourists lots of .... information.
   a) **interesting** b) **boring** c) **uninteresting** d) **dull**

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There's an old .... in my village.
   a) **fisherman** b) **teacher** c) **doctor** d) **plumber**
2. He sells ....
   a) **books** b) **fish** c) **faucets** d) **vegetables**
3. He .... his job.
   a) **dislikes** b) **hates** c) **likes** d) **disagrees**
4. He always has .... fish.
   a) **ugly** b) **dirty** c) **bad** d) **fresh**

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

children - eat - mango - house

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister has a beautiful
1) .... tree next to her
2) .... Every year, the sisters
3) .... beautiful mangoes. Their
4) .... play under the trees.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... works in the tourism industry.
   a) doctor   b) guide   c) teacher   d) farmer
2. We always .... We are different.
   a) disappear   b) dislike   c) disobey   d) disagree
3. Mechanics .... cars.
   a) grow   b) teach   c) sweep   d) fix
4. The guide works in .... industry.
   a) education   b) farming   c) tourism   d) fishing
5. The fisherman works on a ....
   a) boat   b) net   c) restaurant   d) library
6. He .... pizza. He doesn't like it.
   a) enjoys   b) dislikes   c) likes   d) loves
7. My teacher is .... I like him.
   a) hard   b) angry   c) patient   d) sad
8. Farmers .... food.
   a) catch   b) take   c) grow   d) deliver
9. I'm a .... I catch a lot of fish.
   a) fisherman   b) guide   c) teacher   d) doctor
10. My aunt is a .... She works in a library.
    a) guide   b) teacher   c) librarian   d) doctor
11. My father is .... down trees to sell the wood.
    a) driving   b) teaching   c) growing   d) cutting
12. I respect the .... so much, so I don't throw trash.
    a) cleaners   b) plumbers   c) guides   d) farmers
13. He works on a .... on water.
    a) bus   b) plane   c) boat   d) taxi
14. Teachers work in ....
    a) education   b) farming   c) fishing   d) tourism
15. .... is a renewable energy source.
    a) Cool   b) Gas   c) Oil   d) Solar energy

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Amr. I'm in primary four. I like my school very much. I go to school every day. When I grow up, I want to be an electrician. I want to fix things. I like helping people and I think electricity is interesting.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Amr is in primary ....
   a) two b) six c) three d) four
2. Amr wants to be a/an ....
   a) vet b) doctor c) electrician d) teacher

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Does Amr like his school? ....
4. What does Amr think about electricity? ....

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient, too. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "hard" means ....
   a) easy b) difficult c) fast d) slow
2. The main idea of the text is about " .... ".
   a) houses b) teachers c) families d) environment

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can a teacher change? ....
4. What do students always ask? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Mechanics .... (fixes) cars.
2. I'm a farmer. I .... (grows) vegetables.
3. She .... (work) at a school library.
4. I don't think she is right. I .... (agree) with her.
5. The fisherman .... (work) on a boat.
6. Teachers always .... (helps) their students.
7. The guide .... (work) in the tourism industry.
8. What do you .... (doing)?
9. Students always .... (asks) surprising questions.
10. The rat .... (appeared). I can't see it.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. what do you do

....

2. mechanics fix cars

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A teacher

Guiding words:

(teaches - patient - encourages - hard)

....

....

....

إدارة الإسكندرية (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....
   a) plastic b) glass c) paper d) cotton
2. They made .... from papyrus.
   a) baskets b) cars c) pots d) shoes
3. Papyrus needs a lot of .... and warm weather to grow quickly.
   a) air b) water c) seeds d) sunlight
4. It grows in the Nile Delta near the ....
   a) desert b) mountains c) land d) river

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I want to be a .... to catch fish every day.
   a) teacher b) doctor c) fisherman d) farmer
2. Spiders are .... They eat insects.
   a) tall b) funny c) huge d) helpful
3. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a) seeds b) roots c) shoots d) leaves
4. I have a big balcony in my new ....
   a) street b) apartment c) tent d) nest

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

raise - shoot - produce - grow - food

Egyptians farmers are clever. Lots of the 1) .... we eat every day comes from our country. Farmers 2) .... rice, potatoes and tomatoes in Egypt. Egyptian farmers 3) .... chickens, sheep, cow and many other animals. Farmers 4) .... many things that we can buy from the shops or the supermarkets. Egypt is our great country.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Mr. Atef is an active teacher of English. He lives with his family in a village near Luxor. He has a daughter whose name is Nada and a son named Ahmed. Nada is in primary four. She is nine years old. All people in the village love Mr. Atef because he is kind to them. He works in a small school in Luxor. He goes to school by car. He is helpful to his pupils and usually gives them presents.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Nada is in primary ....
   a) **three** b) **four** c) **five** d) **six**
2. Mr. Atef lives with his family in a ....
   a) **country** b) **town** c) **village** d) **city**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Mr. Atef do? ....
4. How does Mr. Atef go to school? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I don't eat candy, ... (and) I like fruit.
2. Horses are faster .... (the) camels.
3. I live in a village .... (under) to the Nile.
4. This .... (are) the mail carrier.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

sarah is a kind supermarket worker

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Hurghada

Guiding elements:

(Hurghada - beach)

إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة التعليمية (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a) soil b) plants c) seeds d) flowers
2. We can take the seeds to .... new tomatoes.
   a) sell b) grow c) buy d) speak
3. The .... grow under the soil.
   a) stems b) leaves c) flowers d) roots
4. The flowers become .... tomato fruits.
   a) yellow b) red c) blue d) black

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... is a very special plant used by the Ancient Egyptians.
   a) Pepper b) Papyrus c) Soil d) Balcony
2. The .... fixes pipes and faucets.
   a) mechanic b) electrician c) plumber d) teacher
3. Teachers need to .... their students.
   a) work b) sell c) encourage d) write
4. Basketball is my favorite ....
   a) drink b) sport c) juice d) food

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

between - next - learn - clothes - shopping mall

My name is Gana. I live in Shoubra with my family. I have only one brother. There is a 1) .... in my street. I buy 2) .... and shoes from it. It's 3) .... to my school where I 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last weekend, Younis and his family took a boat down the River Nile. They listened to music and were happy. Younis saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river. The child shouted "Please help me!". Younis called his dad who saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child. The child smiled and thanked father for saving him. Younis was very happy but he decided to learn to swim.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Younis .... swim.
   a) **could** b) **couldn't** c) **was** d) **wasn't**
2. The child thanked dad for .... him.
   a) **selling** b) **calling** c) **playing with** d) **saving**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who fell into the river? ....
4. What did they enjoy on the boat? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I want to play football .... (and) my leg hurts.
2. The bear is .... (big) than the cat.
3. .... (This is) the plumber's tools.
4. My city is the .... (nice) place to live.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

Dalia can speak english

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Guiding elements: **Camels**

(without water - flat feet)

إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة التعليمية (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Camels are .... animals.
   a) strong b) short c) bad d) sad
2. They can carry people and things across the ....
   a) sea b) desert c) air d) department
3. They are tall animals with thin ....
   a) arms b) nose c) legs d) eyes
4. We can use their fur to make ....
   a) buses b) bikes c) cars d) clothes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The hospital is .... to school.
   a) next b) front c) behind d) between
2. .... on the fan. It's very hot.
   a) Burn b) Think c) Turn d) Put
3. .... children are going to school.
   a) That b) These c) This d) Than
4. The camel is .... than the horse.
   a) tall b) tallest c) short d) taller

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

small - were - big - animals - zoo

My name is Shereen. Last week, I went to the 1) .... with my family. I saw lots of 2) .... there. They were funny. I gave them nuts. The elephants were 3) .... The lions 4) .... very dangerous. I saw a lot of snakes, too. I want to visit the zoo again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرا النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Samir lives in a big house with his family. There is a big garden in the house. In the garden, his grandpa grows many different kinds of vegetables and fruits. He grows tomatoes, carrots and onions. Samir's favourite healthy food is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make delicious juice. Samir likes chocolate, too. He knows it's unhealthy but he thinks it's OK.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Samir lives in a ....
   a) tent b) house c) garden d) farm
2. Smair likes .... , but he knows it's unhealthy.
   a) chocolate b) cola c) mango d) honey

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does his grandpa grow? ....
4. What's Samir's favourite healthy food? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I play tennis .... (but) football.
2. A mouse is smaller .... (then) the horse.
3. My house is next .... (at) the supermarket.
4. These .... (is) the plumber's tools.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

would you cut the mango tree

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A healthy meal

Guiding elements:

(Vegetables - fruits)

إدارة عين شمس التعليمية (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Camels are very .... in Egypt.
   a) dangerous b) hard c) small d) important
2. Camels .... carry people.
   a) can b) are c) have d) can't
3. Camels' milk is ....
   a) bad b) delicious c) spicy d) salty
4. We can use camels' fur to make ....
   a) tables b) food c) clothes d) juice

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I like playing tennis, ... I can't play it well.
   a) because b) and c) so d) but
2. Ali is the .... in his class.
   a) tall b) tallest c) taller d) most tall
3. The .... is a bird.
   a) pelican b) bear c) fox d) camel
4. .... mechanics fix the cars.
   a) That b) This c) These d) They

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

school - likes - teacher - village - Nile

My friend Mariam lives in a big city. It bigger than my 1) ....
Her house is near the 2) .... so she can see the river all day.
Mariam's father is a 3) .... He works in a 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. .... catch thousands of fish.
   a) **Teachers** b) **Farmers** c) **Engineers** d) **Fishermen**
2. The underlined word "good" means ....
   a) **bad** b) **awful** c) **nice** d) **old**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can farmers grow in Damietta? ....
4. Do you think life is good in Damietta? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Ali .... (live) in Hurghada.
2. The fennec fox is .... (small) than other foxes.
3. I .... (repaint) my house yesterday.
4. I .... (do) eat candy, but I eat fruit.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

that is the mail carrier's bag

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Egyptian farmers

Guiding elements:

(grow rice - raise chickens)

إدارة العبور التعليمية (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... have seeds inside.
   a) Onions b) Tomatoes c) Carrots d) Mangoes
2. We can take the .... and grow new tomatoes.
   a) seeds b) soil c) flowers d) leaves
3. We .... the plant every day.
   a) live b) look c) find d) water
4. The roots grow under the ....
   a) balcony b) suitcase c) soil d) river

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A/An.................................. is someone who looks after gardens.
   a) emperor b) scientist c) gardener d) king
2. Farmers like spiders because they are ....
   a) helpful b) scary c) huge d) high
3. My mother is .... the floor.
   a) sleeping b) eating c) sweeping d) swimming
4. We send letters at the.. .
   a) school b) hospital c) station d) post office

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bedroom - balcony - clean - favorite - because

My family moved to a new apartment last week. It's fantastic. My 1) .... room is the living room with the 2) .... Yesterday, I helped my mom 3) .... the kitchen. My sister's favorite room is the 4) .... because she can relax and do her homework.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My friend Hany works at a supermarket near our house. My family and I see him every week when we buy food. Hany checks that the food is fresh. He helps us when we can't find something. He is very kind and happy. We all like him. He likes helping people who come to the supermarket because he is a good man. He likes his job very much.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Hany works at a ....
   a) **hospital** b) **library** c) **supermarket** d) **apartment**
2. We see Hany every ....
   a) **week** b) **day** c) **year** d) **month**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Hany check? ....
4. When does Hany help us? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I don't eat candy, ... (and) I eat fruit when I want something sweet.
2. Camels are .... (tall) than horses.
3. The park is .... (on) the supermarket and the hospital.
4. .... (This) are the bus drivers.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

mechanics fix cars ....

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Healthy food

Guiding elements:

(vegetables - chicken)

إدارة بنها التعليمية (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Students always ask .... questions.
   a) funny b) surprising c) interesting d) boring
2. Teachers need to be very ....
   a) impatient b) unkind c) patient d) bad
3. Teachers .... change their students' lives.
   a) can b) can't c) shouldn't d) couldn't
4. A good teacher is always ready to ....
   a) play b) eat c) sleep d) learn

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The .... is a bird.
   a) pelican b) bear c) fox d) camel
2. Farmers like spiders because they eat ....
   a) fruits b) insects c) birds d) crops
3. We .... respect to the people around us.
   a) disagree b) show c) talk d) work
4. Pros are .... things.
   a) bad b) good c) fun d) fat

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

close - water - desert - touch - flat

Camels are good animals for the 1) .... because they don't drink a lot of 2) .... Their feet are 3) .... so they don't sink in the sand in the desert. They can 4) .... their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hurghada is a beautiful city in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live there. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are a lot of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. There is also Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars, too.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Tourists go on .... in the Sahara Desert.
   a) **school** b) **work** c) **zoo** d) **safaris**
2. "Interesting" means not ....
   a) **big** b) **small** c) **fun** d) **boring**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where is Hurghada? ....
4. How many people live in Hurghada? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Those children .... (is) watching TV now.
2. My house is .... (next) the tall house and the tree.
3. A snake is .... (dangerous) than a fox.
4. Never .... (touches) anything electrical with wet hands.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

I love egypt very much

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Being healthy

Guiding elements:

(vegetables - sports)

محافظة الإسكندرية (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I'm Tarek. I'm ....
   a) unhealthy b) healthy c) fast d) bad
2. On ...., I walk to my grandma's house.
   a) holiday b) Sunday c) the weekend d) Monday
3. I really like ....
   a) talking b) fishing c) swimming d) walking
4. Bananas are my favorite ....
   a) vegetables b) drink c) fruit d) plants

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Farmers in my country .... chickens and cows.
   a) plant b) grow c) raise d) drink
2. Camels are perfect for the ....
   a) river b) farm c) sea d) desert
3. We buy food from the ....
   a) market b) hospital c) museum d) post office
4. The .... delivers letters.
   a) doctor b) plumber c) bus driver d) mail carrier

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

grass - strong - live - faster - shorter

Horses have large, beautiful eyes. They are 1) .... than camels. They run at 88 k.ph. They have 2) .... teeth. They eat 3) .... and drink fresh water. They are shorter than camels. They are about 380 kilograms. They 4) .... up to 30 years.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرا النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hi, I am Ali. I live with my family in a big house in Alexandria. Our house is very nice. It has three bedrooms, two bathrooms, a living room, and a kitchen. We cook in the kitchen. We eat and watchTV in the living room. My favourite room is my bedroom. I like to relax, read books, and do my homework in my bedroom. We always visit our grandparents every Friday.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. They watch TV in the ....
   a) **bedroom** b) **garden** c) **living room** d) **bathroom**
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....
   a) **a bedroom** b) **a house** c) **a garden** d) **a kitchen**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is Ali's favoruite room? ....
4. When do they visit their grandparents? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I don't drink cola .... (but) other unhealthy drinks.
2. Dogs are .... (thin) than elephants.
3. The couch is .... (at) the living room.
4. Those children .... (is) going to school.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

horses like to drink fresh water

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Different jobs

Guiding elements:

(doctor - teacher)

إدارة طوخ التعليمية (8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Soha works at the ....
   a) post office b) school c) supermarket d) hospital
2. We met her when we buy ....
   a) flowers b) food c) plants d) books
3. Soha is very kind and ....
   a) happy b) angry c) small d) thin
4. We see Soha there every ....
   a) morning b) week c) Monday d) Saturday

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I think we .... chickens in Egypt.
   a) raise b) grow c) plant d) water
2. "Honest" means someone who doesn't ....
   a) live b) play c) lie d) win
3. My friend lives on a .... She loves living on water.
   a) tent b) garden c) balcony d) houseboat
4. Reed and lotus flowers grow near .... and lakes.
   a) desert b) farms c) rivers d) forests

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

heat - fur - insects - foxes - desert

The fennec fox is a small animal. It lives in the 1) .... It's smaller than other 2) .... Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs the big ears to hear 3) .... and small animals. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fox loses 4) .... from its ears.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرا النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Hany. I spend my weekend at home with my family. We have three meals every day breakfast, lunch, and dinner. I always have milk and eggs for breakfast. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the family sits together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. I often help her in the kitchen. Today we are having potatoes and chicken. It looks delicious.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. My .... cooks food for the family.
   a) **mother** b) **sister** c) **brother** d) **father**
2. We are having .... and chicken for lunch today.
   a) **pasta** b) **rice** c) **potatoes** d) **salad**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How many meals do they have every day? ....
4. What is Hany's favorite meal? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Camels are .... (tall) than horses.
2. Horses .... (has) large eyes.
3. That .... (am) the post office.
4. I don't eat rice. I .... (like) rice.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

do you like your job

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My House

Guiding elements:

(living room - balcony)

محافظة الفيوم (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Dina is in grade ....
   a) two b) four c) five d) three
2. Dina lives in a/an ....
   a) apartment b) tent c) housecoat d) house
3. Dina's mum cooks in the ....
   a) kitchen b) bedroom c) living room d) office
4. Dina's father grows tomatoes and ....
   a) potatoes b) onions c) carrots d) apples

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... is where an emperor lives.
   a) palace b) school c) farm d) bank
2. We go to the .... when we are sick.
   a) office b) hospital c) shopping mall d) supermarket
3. The .... is huge and scary.
   a) snake b) lizard c) crocodile d) fennec fox
4. The mechanic works in the ....
   a) park b) bank c) repair shop d) garden

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

fish - restaurants - boat - sell - car

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early. I go out on my 1) .... to catch 2) .... I come back and 3) .... my fish in the markets. My fish go to 4) .... and homes all lover the world.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرا النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are perfect for the desert. They have large, flat feet so they don't sink in the sand. Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Camels can help people cross the ....
   a) **road** b) **street** c) **desert** d) **sea**
2. We can use their fur to make ....
   a) **books** b) **doors** c) **clothes** d) **juice**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why can camels walk on the sand? ....
4. How do the camels stop the sand from coming in? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. This .... (are) my father. He is a mechanic.
2. My cat is .... (than) biggest on our street.
3. Ahmed speaks English, ... (and) he can't speak French.
4. I love .... (live) on a houseboat.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

tomatoes are green before they are red ....

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My school

Guiding elements: (big - teachers)

إدارة شبين القناطر (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. All jobs are very ....
   a) bad b) sad c) important d) hard
2. The .... keep the school clean.
   a) cleaners b) chefs c) teachers d) plumbers
3. The electricians connect .... so we can use lights.
   a) gas b) water c) toys d) electricity
4. The mechanics .... cars and school buses.
   a) fix b) cut c) run d) eat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Birds have .... and wings.
   a) beaks b) fins c) fur d) tomatoes
2. Horses can eat grass and drink .... water.
   a) salt b) sweet c) fresh d) unhealthy
3. The .... grow under the soil.
   a) flowers b) roots c) leaves d) shoots
4. A .... fixes pipes and faucets.
   a) chef b) teacher c) driver d) plumber

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

sad - weather - crops - Dam - tourists

Last February Adel went to Aswan to enjoy the warm 1) .... On the first day of his visit, he saw the Aswan 2) .... and met a lot of 3) .... from other countries. On the second day, he went to the High Dam which is in the south of Aswan Dam. It helps Egypt grow more 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ahmed is a clever boy. He is ten years old. He is in grade four. He has English, Arabic, math, science and art. Ahmed's favorite subject is English. He likes his teachers. His school is very big. It has a green playground. He lives in a big house. He goes to school with his friend. He goes to school at seven o'clock. He walks to school with his friend every day. Ahmed wants to be a doctor when he grows up.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ahmed is in grade ....
   a) five b) four c) three d) ten
2. Ahmed's favorite subject is ....
   a) math b) art c) Arabic d) English

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How old is Ahmed? ....
4. What does Ahmed want to be when he grows up? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Elephants are bigger .... (then) lions.
2. I like playing football, ... (and) I can't play it well.
3. Let's .... (having) a red tomato.
4. The car is .... (behind) to the tent.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

i respect my teacher

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Animals in Egypt

Guiding elements:

(Camels - Fennec fox)

محافظة المنصورة (11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ali's hope is to live in ....
   a) a tent   b) a house   c) a houseboat   d) an apartment
2. His mother lives in ....
   a) Cairo   b) Aswan   c) Alexandria   d) Suez
3. Ali travels on the ....
   a) Nile   b) Sea   c) Ocean   d) Canal
4. Ali likes ....
   a) winter   b) summer   c) spring   d) fall

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The emperor lives in a ....
   a) school   b) palace   c) tent   d) hospital
2. Camels have large .... feet.
   a) flat   b) tall   c) short   d) noisy
3. Farmers grow many .... like bananas and oranges.
   a) fruit   b) vegetables   c) sweets   d) animals
4. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus as ....
   a) plastic   b) paper   c) wood   d) metal

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

early - hot - fun - apartment - garbage

My friend Omar lives in an 1) .... It's next to mine. He works as a mail carrier. It's an important job but it's not 2) .... when the weather is very 3) .... or cold. Omar wakes up very 4) .... and also he walks all day and gets a lot of exercise. He loves his job very much although it's very hard.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Mohamed. I'm from Alexandria. My family moved to a new apartment. It's near to my school. So I can walk to school with my friends.

Our school is near a big zoo, so we can go and see animals like giraffes, lions and elephants. We sometimes go to the beach to swim and enjoy playing with sand as we can build enormous sandcastles. All of us like going to the beach.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "It" refers to ....
   a) apartment b) Cairo c) Alexandria d) The beach
2. Mohamed goes to school ....
   a) by bus b) by taxi c) on foot d) by bike

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why do Mohamed and his friends go to the beach? ....
4. Where can Mohamed see animals? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The giraffes are the .... (tall) animals.
2. Let's .... (having) lunch.
3. Camels are bigger .... (then) fennec foxes.
4. .... (When) is your house? It's next to the park.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

why do plants need water ....

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My favourite room

Guiding elements:

(balcony - relax)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... are perfect for the desert.
   a) Crocodiles b) Rats c) Camels d) Cats
2. Camels have flat ....
   a) feet b) mouths c) eyes d) ears
3. Camels can .... on sand.
   a) walk b) swim c) drive d) eat
4. They can .... without water for a long time.
   a) live b) sleep c) go d) grow

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Roots grow under the ....
   a) chair b) table c) shoot d) soil
2. We can see the street from our ....
   a) balcony b) bedroom c) tent d) kitchen
3. They go to the .... to send letters.
   a) school b) post office c) hospital d) shop
4. My father is a .... He catches a lot of fish.
   a) fisherman b) teacher c) doctor d) mechanic

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

meets - tourists - stores - travels - English

Ahmed likes the summer very much. His parents work on tourist boats. He 1) .... up and down the Nile with them. He sees many interesting places. He 2) .... people from all over the world. He speaks 3) .... and Chinese with the 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Waleed. I live on a farm with my mom and dad. We plant millions of seeds to keep the farm green. We use the Nile to water them. We grow many fruits like oranges and mangoes. We raise farm animals like goats, cows, chickens, and sheep. I like living on the farm. I don't like the polluted air and the noise in the city. I love mom and dad so much.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) Waleed   b) Ali   c) Mona   d) Hani
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
   a) goats   b) seeds   c) sheep   d) cows

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do Waleed and his family live? ....
4. What doesn't Waleed like? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The snakes are the .... (more) dangerous animals.
2. We like to drink cola, ... (and) it's unhealthy.
3. This car .... (are) very old.
4. Let's .... (doing) our homework.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

we all love Egypt

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Your healthy food and drinks

Guiding elements:

(chicken and rice - orange juice)

إدارة الأقصر التعليمية (13)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt.
   a) east b) west c) north d) south
2. Hurghada is on the .... Sea.
   a) Black b) Green c) Red d) Blue
3. It's a .... city.
   a) small b) big c) bad d) dirty
4. About 190.000 people .... there.
   a) visit b) live c) play d) run

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live on a .... I love living on water.
   a) tent b) house c) apartment d) houseboat
2. .... are perfect for the desert.
   a) Horses b) Bears c) Pelicans d) Camels
3. We .... chicken to get eggs and meat.
   a) raise b) read c) look d) see
4. Dogs are .... than elephants.
   a) thin b) thinner c) thinnest d) the thinnest

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

germination - tomatoes - flower - grow - potatoes

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can use these seeds to 1) .... new tomatoes. This is called 2) .... We put the seeds in the soil and water them every day. Plants grow taller and bigger. The plants finally grow 3) .... and the flower became 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

All jobs are important. There many workers that help us. A mail carrier delivers your parcels. An electrician fixes sockets. A garbage collector collects the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need a plumber to fix pipes and faucets. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. All these workers should work hard together to help people and make their life easier.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. We need a/an .... to fix pipes and faucets.
   a) **plumber** b) **electrician** c) **bus driver** d) **mail carrier**
2. The word " .... " in the text means garbage.
   a) **letter** b) **faucets** c) **pipe** d) **trash**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the bus driver do? ....
4. Who collects the trash? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. My school is next .... (of) my house.
2. I like to play football .... (and) I don't like tennis.
3. The giraffe is the .... (taller) animal.
4. The roots grow .... (above) the soil.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

why do the parents sit in the balcony

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Fennec fox

Guiding elements:

(ears - small)

إدارة كفر الشيخ التعليمية (14)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in ....
   a) sports b) nutrients c) seeds d) weather
2. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, ... and guavas.
   a) mangoes b) potatoes c) strawberries d) wheat
3. .... catch thousands of fish in the sea.
   a) Teachers b) Farmers c) Engineers d) Fishermen
4. .... is good in Damietta.
   a) Live b) Living c) Lives d) Life

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I can relax and .... my homework in my bedroom.
   a) do b) make c) watch d) get
2. Cheng was good at looking .... his garden.
   a) at b) for c) after d) from
3. How .... does a rhim gazelle live? - About 14 years.
   a) heavy b) long c) tall d) color
4. The fox's thick fur keeps it ....
   a) cold b) heat c) hot d) warm

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

juicy - beak - paw - hungry - thirsty

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very 1) ....
They are both looking at a big, 2) .... fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its 3) .... The pelican opens its 4) ....
It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

All jobs are important. There many workers that help us. A mail carrier delivers your parcels. An electrician fixes sockets. A garbage collector collects the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need a plumber to fix pipes and faucets. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. All these workers should work hard together to help people and make their life easier.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. We need a/an .... to fix sockets.
   a) **electrician** b) **plumber** c) **bus driver** d) **mail carrier**
2. The word garbage means ....
   a) **faucets** b) **trash** c) **pipe** d) **letter**

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does a plumber do? ....
4. Why should all these workers work together? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I don't really like .... (drive) cars.
2. My city is the .... (nice) place to live in.
3. The sunflower is the .... (big).
4. .... (These) is a garbage collector.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

what job do you want to do

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Camels

Guiding elements:

(desert - flat feet - milk)

محافظة مرسى مطروح (15)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a) seeds   b) leaves   c) trees   d) soil
2. The leaves are ....
   a) red   b) green   c) yellow   d) pink
3. Tomatoes need .... to grow.
   a) rice   b) food   c) water   d) tea
4. The roots grow .... the soil.
   a) of   b) near   c) on   d) under

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Acacia grows in the .... habitat.
   a) desert   b) lake   c) river   d) farm
2. It's a wonderful view from the ....
   a) table   b) balcony   c) chair   d) oven
3. .... is the station, please?
   a) Who   b) Why   c) Where   d) When
4. Spiders are very .... They eat insects.
   a) cute   b) kind   c) nice   d) helpful

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

small - wings - amazing - spider - beaks

I like birds a lot. I see them every day. They have 1) .... to fly. They have 2) .... to eat food. Birds have legs and tails. Some birds are big and others are 3) .... Some of them are 4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرا النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Elephant is a big animal. It has a long nose and big ears. Elephants need to live in very large areas because they eat and drink a lot. They eat grass and leaves. They don't eat meat. They are the biggest animals.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The elephant is a .... animal.
   a) big b) bad c) small d) tiny
2. They are the biggest ....
   a) birds b) animals c) insects d) bees

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the elephant have?

....

4. What does it eat?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. .... (These) is the school where I learn.
2. .... (Are) the cat under the table?
3. Crocodiles are .... (most) dangerous than monkeys.
4. I play football .... (so) I eat vegetables

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

ali's house is next to the Nile

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My home

Guiding elements:

(Where do you live? - What is your favorite room?)

1 Listen and choose

استمع واختر.

1. We moved to a new ....
   a) tent　　b) apartment　　c) houseboat
2. Ali's favorite room is the ....
   a) bedroom　　b) living room　　c) dining room
3. The balcony is ....
   a) small　　b) big　　c) short

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

rice - delicious - right - special

Mom : Lunch is ready. I made some 1) .... food for us.

Maged : Mom, it looks 2) ....!

Mom : Which food comes from our country, do you think?

Maged : I think we grow 3) .... in Egypt.

Mom : Yes, that's 4) ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

A) Answer the following questions.

1. Where does the fennec fox live? ....
2. What does the fennec fox eat? ....

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. The fennec fox is .... than other foxes.
   a) smaller   b) bigger   c) taller
4. During the day, it is .... in the desert.
   a) warm   b) cold   c) hot
5. The fennec fox's thick .... keeps it warm.
   a) ear   b) fur   c) tail

4 Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My cat is the .... on our street.
   a) biggest   b) big   c) bigger
2. We watch TV in the ....
   a) bathroom   b) living room   c) kitchen
3. The .... fix the cars and buses.
   a) cleaners   b) plumbers   c) mechanics
4. .... is a renewable energy source.
   a) Gas   b) Oil   c) Wave energy
5. I want to play football, ... my leg hurts.
   a) and   b) so   c) but

5 Re-arrange the following words to make correct sentences. اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. is - A mouse - than - an elephant - smaller - .
....
2. are - the - tomatoes - Why - green - ?
....
3. grandparents - us - My - with - live - .
....
4. you - Where - work - do - ?
....
5. listen - teachers - to - carefully - We - our - .
....

منطقة الإسكندرية الأزهرية (17)

1 Listen and choose
استمع واختر.

1. Hossam's favorite room is the ....
   a) kitchen   b) bedroom   c) living room   d) dining room
2. Hossam .... do his homework quietly.
   a) can't   b) can   c) is   d) are
3. Hossam has a .... balcony.
   a) small   b) big   c) cold   d) hot

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.
اقرأ وأكمل المربع الحواري بكلمات من المربع.

live - houseboat - you - Nile

Hazem : Where do 1) .... live?

Anas : I live on a 2) .... What about you?

Hazem : I 3) .... in a village next to the 4) ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Zain. I'm in grade four. My favorite sport is basketball. I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice four times every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I eat healthy food. I eat fruit and vegetables. I play basketball with my friends in the park.

A) Answer the following questions.

1. How many times do they practice every week?
   ....
2. Does Zain eat healthy food?
   ....

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. Zain is in grade ....
   a) three   b) four   c) five
4. He likes to play ....
   a) volleyball   b) tennis   c) basketball
5. Zain wants to drink more ....
   a) juice   b) water   c) milk

4 Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I sleep in a big .... It has two big beds.
   a) bathroom   b) bedroom   c) kitchen
2. .... is the cat? It's under the table.
   a) What   b) Why   c) Where
3. The mouse is .... than the elephant.
   a) smallest   b) smaller   c) small
4. .... keep the school clean.
   a) Cleaners   b) Plumbers   c) Teachers
5. Camels are perfect for the ....
   a) sea   b) lake   c) desert

5 Re-arrange the following words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. next - My home - is - the - to - school - .

....

2. park - play - the - I - in - football - .

....

3. are - and - The pelican - in - the bear - the river - .

....

4. is - Where - the - mall - shopping - ?

....

5. you - helping - people - like - Do - ?

....

منطقة الشرقية الأزهرية (18)

1 Listen and choose

استمع واختر.

1. We grow .... in Egypt.
   a) **rice**   b) **flowers**   c) **tea**
2. Farmers raise .... to get eggs.
   a) **cows**   b) **chickens**   c) **lions**
3. Our food is ....
   a) **bad**   b) **delicious**   c) **salty**

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

اقرأ وأكمل المربع الحواري بكلمات من المربع.

room - homework - apartment - bedroom

Mom : Look at our lovely new 1) ....!

Hala : It's fantastic!

Mom : Which is your favourite 2) ....?

Hala : It's my 3) ...., I can relax and do my 4) ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow - white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

A) Answer the following questions.

1. What do rhim gazelles eat?

....

2. Where do rhim gazelles live?

....

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. Rhim gazelles don't need a lot of water like ....
   a) cats   b) foxes   c) camels
4. They have yellow - white coats to protect them from the ....
   a) sun   b) animals   c) moon
5. They have long ....
   a) mouth   b) horns   c) eyes

4 Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The elephant is .... than the mouse.
   a) big   b) bigger   c) biggest
2. The fishermen .... fish.
   a) work   b) grow   c) catch
3. Mum cooks in the ....
   a) living room   b) kitchen   c) bed
4. The hospital is .... to school.
   a) next   b) behind   c) in front of
5. His car is dirty, he will .... it.
   a) reclean   b) reread   c) redo

5 Re-arrange the following words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. eats - The fennec fox - insects - lizards - and - .

....

2. do - you - Where - live - ?

....

3. fastest - is - Cheetah - the - animal - .

....

4. pencil case - My - is - the table - on - .

....

5. want - to be - a teacher - I - .

....

منطقة الغربية الأزهرية (19)

1 Listen and choose استمع واختر.

1. Camels are very important ....
   a) animals b) plants c) insects
2. Camels are ....
   a) weak b) short c) strong
3. They carry people and things across the ....
   a) sea b) desert c) river

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

اقرأ وأكمل المربع الحواري بكلمات من المربع.

delicious - country - grow - ready

Mom : Lunch is 1) .... I made some special food for us.

Sedra : Mom, it looks 2) ....!

Mom : Which food comes from our 3) ...., do you think?

Sedra : I think we 4) .... rice in Egypt.

Mom : Yes, that's right.

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats, so he goes with them. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

A) Answer the following questions.

1. Where does Sherif live?

....

2. Who does he meet?

....

B) Choose the correct answer.

3. Sherif lives on a boat in the ....
   a) winter b) summer c) spring d) January
4. Sherif sees many .... places.
   a) bad b) ugly c) interesting d) boring
5. He speaks Chinese and .... with tourists.
   a) English b) Arabic c) French d) German

4 Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Horses eat .... and drink fresh water.
   a) meat b) fish c) grass d) insects
2. The .... grow under the soil.
   a) roots b) leaves c) flowers d) fruits
3. A mouse is .... than an elephant.
   a) small b) smaller c) heavy d) smallest
4. We buy food at the ....
   a) hospital b) school c) supermarket d) post office
5. .... is the socket. It is very near.
   a) This b) That c) These d) Those

5 Re-arrange the following words to make correct sentences.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملاً صحيحة.

1. weekend - I - shopping - last - went - .

....

2. Minya - Farmers - in - sugarcane - grow - ?

....

3. How - is - flower - big - the - ?

....

4. do - Where - work - you - ?

....

5. tree - cut - She - sold - wood - the - and - .

....

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Egyptian farmers produce many things. They grow vegetables and fruits. They raise chickens to get eggs and meat. They use water from the Nile to water the plants.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seeds in the soil and gave them water. But nothing happened because the seeds were dead.

Unit (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Camels are amazing. They're beautiful, strong animals. They carry things and people. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. It needs big ears to hear insects. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.

Unit (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs sunlight and water to grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

Unit (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. I play games with my brother in the living room. The living room is big.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

There are two beds in my bedroom. There are two chairs and a table. The table is between the two beds. There is a book on the table

Unit (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The plumbers are helpful. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The cleaners keep our school clean. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

A bus driver takes the children to school. A mechanic fixes the buses. A plumber fixes the pipes and faucets. A garbage collector takes away the garbage.

Unit (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm a guide. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country. It's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

There's an old fisherman in my village. He sells fish. He likes his job. We buy fish from him. He always has fresh fish.

Exam (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

Exam (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. The roots grow under the soil. The flowers become red tomato fruits.

Exam (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Camels are strong animals. They can carry people and things across the desert. They are tall animals with thin legs. We can use their fur to make clothes.

Exam (4)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Camels are very important in Egypt. Camels can carry people. Camels' milk is delicious. We can use camels' fur to make clothes.

Exam (5)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil.

Exam (6)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to be very patient. Teachers can change their students' lives. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

Exam (7)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

I'm Tarek. I'm healthy. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house. I really like walking. Bananas are my favorite fruit.

Exam (8)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Soha works at the supermarket. We met her when we buy food. Soha is very kind and happy. We see Soha there every week.

Exam (9)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Dina is in grade four. Dina lives in a house. Dina's mum cooks in the kitchen. Dina's father grows tomatoes and potatoes.

Exam (10)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

All jobs are very important. The cleaners keep the school clean. The electricians connect electricity so we can use lights. The mechanics fix cars and school buses.

Exam (11)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Ali's hope is to live in a houseboat. His mother lives in Suez. Ali travels on the Canal. Ali likes Spring.

Exam (12)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels have flat feet. Camels can walk on sand. They can live without water for a long time.

Exam (13)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Hurghada is in the east of Egypt. Hurghada is on the Red Sea. It's a big city. About 190.000 people live there.

Exam (14)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, wheat and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Life is good in Damietta.

Exam (15)

- **Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Tomatoes have seeds inside. The leaves are green. Tomatoes need water to grow. The roots grow under the soil.

Exam (16)

- **Listen and choose.**

We moved to a new apartment. Ali's favorite room is the living room. The balcony is big.

Exam (17)

- **Listen and choose.**

Hossam's favorite room is the bedroom. Hossam can do his homework quietly. Hossam has a big balcony.

Exam (18)

- **Listen and choose.**

We grow rice in Egypt. Farmers raise chickens to get eggs. Our food is delicious.

Exam (19)

- **Listen and choose.**

Camels are very important animals. They can live in the desert. They are strong. They carry people and things across the desert.